Revised Draft:
Report on Carcinogens Monograph on
Haloacetic Acids Found as Water Disinfection
By-Products

October 30, 2017

Office of the Report on Carcinogens
Division of the National Toxicology Program
National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences
U.S. Department of Health and Human Services
Foreword

The National Toxicology Program (NTP) is an interagency program within the Public Health Service (PHS) of the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) and is headquartered at the National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences of the National Institutes of Health (NIEHS/NIH). Three agencies contribute resources to the program: NIEHS/NIH, the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (NIOSH/CDC), and the National Center for Toxicological Research of the Food and Drug Administration (NCTR/FDA). Established in 1978, the NTP is charged with coordinating toxicological testing activities, strengthening the science base in toxicology, developing and validating improved testing methods, and providing information about potentially toxic substances to health regulatory and research agencies, scientific and medical communities, and the public.

The Report on Carcinogens (RoC) is prepared in response to Section 301 of the Public Health Service Act as amended. The RoC contains a list of identified substances (i) that either are known to be human carcinogens or are reasonably anticipated to be human carcinogens and (ii) to which a significant number of persons residing in the United States are exposed. The NTP, with assistance from other Federal health and regulatory agencies and nongovernmental institutions, prepares the report for the Secretary, Department of HHS. The most recent RoC, the 13th Edition (2014), is available at http://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/go/roc.

Nominations for (1) listing a new substance, (2) reclassifying the listing status for a substance already listed, or (3) removing a substance already listed in the RoC are evaluated in a scientific review process (http://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/go/rocprocess) with multiple opportunities for scientific and public input and using established listing criteria (http://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/go/15209). A list of candidate substances under consideration for listing in (or delisting from) the RoC can be obtained by accessing http://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/go/37893.
Background and Methods

Water disinfection is among the most important and beneficial public health advances of the 20th century and has substantially reduced United States incidence of cholera, typhoid, and amoebic dysentery caused by waterborne pathogens (Richardson et al. 2007). According to EPA, over 48,000 U.S. public water systems provide disinfected water to more than 250 million people, while 10% to 15% of the U.S. population uses private groundwater wells that are typically not disinfected (EPA 2005, 2015a, 2015b). In addition, swimming pools and spas use on-site chlorination or bromination of water for disinfection. A consequence of the water disinfection process is the formation of a large number of unintended compounds from chemicals and organic material in the water; these unintended chemicals are of potential public health concern (IPCS 2000). Reports have put the number at over 500 chemicals, and identification of more by-products is ongoing. Haloacetic acids (HAAs) and trihalomethanes (THMs) are the largest groups of water disinfection by-products by weight and make up about 50% to 75% of total halogenated disinfection by-products measured and about 25% to 50% of total organic halides measured (Krasner et al. 2006, Krasner et al. 2016a). Two of four U.S. EPA-regulated trihalomethanes, chloroform and bromodichloromethane, are listed in the RoC as reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen. Over thirty different forms of haloacetic acids are chemically possible, including iodinated and fluorinated forms. Some of these halogen-substituted acetic acids have been identified in drinking water and five are regulated by U.S. EPA (2010).

Background

The Office of the Report on Carcinogens (ORoC) has evaluated mono-, di- and trihaloacetic acids identified in drinking water for possible listing in the RoC. The haloacetic acids evaluated consist of nine chlorine and bromine-containing mono-, di- or trihaloacetic acids either regulated by EPA or being considered for regulation and four iodine-containing acetic acids for a total of 13 haloacetic acids (see Properties section for a list of the HAAs evaluated). As part of the evaluation, ORoC assessed whether some or all of these chemicals can be considered members of a class of carcinogens or if they should be considered separately. It is known that the type and proportion of haloacetic acids formed differ with different disinfection processes and water sources. In addition, some haloacetic acids in drinking water that are not monitored or regulated may have health consequences. It is important to review the haloacetic acid chemical group for carcinogenicity and identify chemicals that may be cancer hazards as this information can help to inform public health decisions on water regulations and on water disinfection processes.

As per the process for preparation of the Report on Carcinogens (RoC), the Office of the RoC released a draft concept document for “Haloacetic acids (HAAs) Found as Water Disinfection By-Products,” which outlined the rationale and proposed the approach for their review, for public comment. ORoC also presented the draft to the NTP Board of Scientific Counselors (BSC) at the April 11, 2016 meeting, which provided opportunity for written and oral public comments. Subsequent to the meeting, the concept was finalized and HAAs were approved by the NTP Director as a candidate substance for review. The concept document is available on the RoC website (https://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/go/790113).
At an Information Group Meeting on HAAs at NIEHS on September 9, 2016, input from scientific experts on water disinfection by-products and cancer mechanisms was requested early in the review process. The approach to evaluation of individual HAAs and data needs were discussed for evaluation of physicochemical, mechanistic, and cancer endpoints. A “read-across” approach (see Section 7 for discussion of this approach), based on available data for the HAAs (classified as the number of halogen substitutions (e.g., mono-, di- or tri-) or type of halogen substitution (e.g., chlorine, bromine, and iodine), to determine if haloacetic acids could be evaluated as a chemical class, or subclass(es) was considered. Technical advisors for the review of HAAs as Water Disinfection By-products are identified on the “CONTRIBUTORS” page of this monograph.

Public comments on scientific issues were requested at several times prior to the development of the RoC monograph, including the request for information on the nomination, and the request for comment on the draft concept document, which outlined the rationale and approach for conducting the scientific review. In addition, the NTP posted its protocol for preparing the draft RoC monograph on Haloacetic Acids Found as Water Disinfection By-Products for public input on the ORoC webpage at (https://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/go/790113) prior to the release of the draft monograph.

Methods for developing the RoC monograph

This RoC monograph on HAAs Found as Water Disinfection By-Products evaluates the available, relevant scientific information and assesses its quality, for each individual HAA or for potential evaluation of the HAAs as a chemical class or subclass, applies the RoC listing criteria to the scientific information, and recommends an RoC listing status (see Figure 1). The monograph also contains draft profiles containing the NTP’s preliminary listing recommendation, a summary of the scientific evidence considered key to reaching that recommendation, and data on properties, use, production, exposure, and Federal regulations and guidelines to reduce exposure to haloacetic acids in the public water supply and from other potential exposures.

Monograph contents

The process of applying the RoC listing criteria to the body of evidence includes an assessment of the level of evidence from cancer studies in humans and experimental animals on haloacetic acids. In addition, an assessment is made on the available mechanistic and other relevant data (such as disposition and toxicokinetics), and the final listing recommendations are based on an integration of all the relevant information. A key question is whether the scientific information supports listing haloacetic acids as a class, as subclasses, or as individual haloacetic acids. Read-across principles were used in this assessment based on discussions with information groups. In addition, listing in the RoC requires that a significant number of people residing in the United States are exposed to haloacetic acids and the monograph provides information on the relevant exposure information. This information is captured in different sections of the monograph as outlined below.

- Properties (Section 1)
- Human Exposure (Section 2)
• Disposition and Toxicokinetics (Section 3)
• Studies of Cancer in Experimental Animals (Section 4)
• Human Cancer Studies (Section 5)
• Mechanistic and Other Relevant Data (Section 6)
• Evaluation of HAAs as a Class or Subclass (Section 7)
• Overall Cancer Evaluation and Preliminary Listing Recommendation (Section 8).

The latter sections (Sections 7 and 8) of the monograph are informed by the information and assessments of the data reported in the earlier sections, especially Sections 1, 3, 4 and 6 (see Figure 1). The information must come from publicly available sources. The appendices in the RoC monograph contain important supplementary information, including the literature search strategy, disposition data tables, tables with results of animal studies and/or study quality tables for cancer studies in experimental animals, and results from the mechanism studies (e.g., genotoxicity studies).

**Key scientific questions for each type of evidence stream**

The monograph provides information relevant to the following questions for each type of evidence stream or section topic. Only one human cancer study on exposure specific to haloacetic acids was identified. The study was summarized and reviewed; however, the data were inadequate to conduct a formal assessment.

**Questions related to the evaluation of properties and human exposure information**

• What are the physicochemical properties of HAAs and how do they differ with number and type of halogen substitutions?
• Are a significant number of people residing in the United States exposed to haloacetic acids found in disinfected drinking water?
• In what ways can the population be exposed to HAAs?
• What are the levels of HAAs in drinking water and what federal regulations and guidelines limit exposures?
• How is exposure controlled; what remediation methods are used or proposed?
Figure 1. Organization of information in the RoC monograph for HAAs

BMD = benchmark dose, which is a dose or concentration that produces a predetermined change in response rate of an adverse effect compared to background; HAAs = haloacetic acids; MOAs = modes of action; RoC = Report on Carcinogens; TK = toxicokinetics TD50s = chronic dose rate that would induce tumors in half the animals tested.
Questions related to the evaluation of disposition and toxicokinetics

• How are HAAs absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted (ADME)?
• What are the primary metabolites? What is their relative distribution in blood and/or urine? What parent compounds or metabolites may have a role in carcinogenesis?
• What are the differences/similarities between humans and experimental animals for ADME?
• Can existing data on ADME or toxicokinetics inform the potential outcomes for HAAs with insufficient data? For example, can information on chlorinated and brominated HAAs be used to predict outcomes for iodinated species?

Questions related to the evaluation of cancer studies in experimental animals

• What is the level of evidence (sufficient or not sufficient) of carcinogenicity of HAAs from animal studies?
• What are the methodological strengths and limitations of the studies?
• What are the tissue sites and are there any trends in tissue sites with number or type of halogen substitutions?

Questions related to the evaluation of mechanistic data and other relevant data

• What are the genotoxic effects due to exposure to HAAs? Does genotoxicity vary by individual HAA or by number or type of halogen substitutions? Do findings from in vitro studies correlate with those from in vivo studies?
• What are the cytotoxic or toxic effects of individual HAA exposure? Does cytotoxicity or toxicity vary by HAA, such as, by type or number of halogen substitutions?
• What are the major mechanistic modes of action for the carcinogenicity of HAAs?
  o What are the common key steps or potential molecular initiating events of toxicity or carcinogenicity across different HAAs?
  o What factors influence biological or carcinogenic effects?

Questions related to evaluation of HAAs as a class

• Is there evidence that supports grouping HAAs as a class or as a subclass in the assessment?

Methods for preparing the monograph

The methods for preparing the RoC monograph on HAAs are described in the “Haloacetic acids: RoC Protocol,” (available at https://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/go/790113) which incorporated a systematic review approach for identification and selection of the literature (see Appendix A), using inclusion/exclusion criteria, extraction of data and evaluation of study quality using specific guidelines, and assessment of the level of evidence for carcinogenicity using established
criteria. Links are provided within the document to the appendices, and specific tables or sections can be selected from the table of contents.

**General procedures** (See the RoC Protocol for a detailed description of methods.)

**Selection of the literature:** The preparation of the RoC monograph on HAAs found as water disinfection by-products began with development of a literature search strategy to obtain information relevant to the topics listed above for Sections 1 through 7 using search terms outlined in the Protocol. The approximately 11,600 citations identified from these searches were uploaded to web-based systematic review software for evaluation by two separate reviewers using inclusion/exclusion criteria, and 327 references were selected for final inclusion in the monograph using these criteria. Literature searches were updated to May 2017.

**Data extraction and quality assurance procedures:** Information for the relevant cancer and mechanistic sections was systematically extracted in tabular format and/or summarized in the text from studies selected for inclusion in the monograph. All sections of the monograph underwent scientific review and quality assurance (QA, i.e., assuring that all the relevant data and factual information extracted from the publications have been reported accurately) by a separate reviewer. Any discrepancies between the writer and the reviewer were resolved by mutual discussion in reference to the original data source.

**Evaluation of cancer studies in experimental animals:** Evaluation of the potential for biases as well as other elements were assessed based on a series of *a priori* considerations (questions and guidelines for answering the questions), which are available in the protocol (available at https://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/go/790113). Two reviewers evaluated the quality of each study. Any disagreements between the two reviewers were resolved by mutual discussion or consultation with a third reviewer in reference to the original data source. The approach for synthesizing the evidence across studies and reaching a level of evidence conclusion is outlined in the protocol. Level of evidence conclusions were made by applying the RoC criteria (see above) to the body of evidence. Because one of the objectives of the monograph was to determine whether haloacetic acids could be evaluated as a class or subclasses, level of evidence conclusions for carcinogenicity (sufficient, not sufficient) were made after the evaluation of the mechanistic data and reported in the overall evaluation.

**Evaluation of mechanistic and other relevant data and approaches for evaluating HAAs as a class or subclasses:** As mentioned in the protocol, the mechanistic data were organized by characteristics of carcinogens (such as genotoxicity, oxidative stress, alters energy metabolism, and epigenetic alterations) to help inform the relevant modes of action, identify key events or molecular initiation events or adverse pathways. Mechanistic data and toxicokinetic data are discussed across the haloacetic acids to determine if there are any patterns between effects and the number and type of halogen substitutions. This information (e.g., key events and differences in potency for key events and toxicokinetics across haloacetic acids) as well as information on physical properties, and animal carcinogenicity data were used in a read-across like analysis to determine whether haloacetic acids could be evaluated as a class or subclass (see Figure 1). Details on these methods are reported in Section 7 of this monograph.
Overall evaluation and preliminary listing recommendation: The evidence from the cancer studies in experimental animals was integrated with the assessment of the mechanistic and other relevant data, as well as the conclusions of the assessments of HAAs as a class or subclass (see Figure 1). The RoC listing criteria were then applied to the body of knowledge to reach listing recommendation(s) regarding HAA exposures.

RoC Listing Criteria

**Known To Be Human Carcinogen:**
There is sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity from studies in humans*, which indicates a causal relationship between exposure to the agent, substance, or mixture, and human cancer.

**Reasonably Anticipated To Be Human Carcinogen:**
There is limited evidence of carcinogenicity from studies in humans*, which indicates that causal interpretation is credible, but that alternative explanations, such as chance, bias, or confounding factors, could not adequately be excluded, OR
there is sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity from studies in experimental animals, which indicates there is an increased incidence of malignant and/or a combination of malignant and benign tumors (1) in multiple species or at multiple tissue sites, or (2) by multiple routes of exposure, or (3) to an unusual degree with regard to incidence, site, or type of tumor, or age at onset, OR
there is less than sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in humans or laboratory animals; however, the agent, substance, or mixture belongs to a well-defined, structurally related class of substances whose members are listed in a previous Report on Carcinogens as either known to be a human carcinogen or reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen, or there is convincing relevant information that the agent acts through mechanisms indicating it would likely cause cancer in humans.

Conclusions regarding carcinogenicity in humans or experimental animals are based on scientific judgment, with consideration given to all relevant information. Relevant information includes, but is not limited to, dose response, route of exposure, chemical structure, metabolism, pharmacokinetics, sensitive sub-populations, genetic effects, or other data relating to mechanism of action or factors that may be unique to a given substance. For example, there may be substances for which there is evidence of carcinogenicity in laboratory animals, but there are compelling data indicating that the agent acts through mechanisms which do not operate in humans and would therefore not reasonably be anticipated to cause cancer in humans.

*This evidence can include traditional cancer epidemiology studies, data from clinical studies, and/or data derived from the study of tissues or cells from humans exposed to the substance in question that can be useful for evaluating whether a relevant cancer mechanism is operating in people.
Collaborators, Contributors and Acknowledgments

Report on Carcinogens Monograph Evaluation Team (Collaborators)

Responsible for oversight and coordination of project activities including conception and design, planning, conduct, technical review and cancer hazard evaluation

Gloria D. Jahnke, ORoC, NIEHS (NTP co-project leader)
Ruth M. Lunn, ORoC, NIEHS

Contributed to design, conduct, technical review and interpretation of the studies

Stanley Atwood, ILS (ILS co-project leader)
Andrew Ewens, ILS
Sanford Garner, ILS
Alton Peters, ILS

Report on Carcinogens Monograph Evaluation Team (Contributors)

Provided technical input or review

NIEHS/DNTP Staff

Scott Auerbach
Windy Boyd
Michael DeVito
Steven Ferguson
Michelle Hooth
Scott Masten
Suril Mehta, ORoC
Arun Pandiri
Kristen Ryan
Suramya Waidyanatha
Nigel Walker
Vickie Walker
Amy Wang, ORoC

Contract Staff

Whitney Arroyave, ILS
Anna Engstrom, ICF
Jessica Geter, ILS
Technical Advisors

Ron Melnick, PhD
Ron Melnick Consulting, LLC
North Logan, UT

Grace Patlewicz, PhD
US Environmental Protection Agency
Research Triangle Park, NC

Michael Plewa, PhD
Professor Emeritus
University of Illinois
Champaign-Urbana, IL

Susan Richardson, PhD
University of South Carolina
Columbia, SC

Jane Ellen Simmons, PhD
US Environmental Protection Agency
Research Triangle Park, NC

Other management, technical, and administrative support

Organized the peer review of the monograph
Mary Wolfe, NIEHS

Developed web-based databases and data visualization
Andy Shapiro, NIEHS

Scientific and copy editing of specific sections of the monograph
Susan Dakin, independent consultant a

Administrative support for the preparation of the monograph
Ella Darden, ILS
Tracy Saunders, ILS

Logistical support for the peer-review meeting
Louise Assem, ICF
Canden Byrd, ICF
Susan Blaine, ICF
Anna Stamatogiannakis, ICF

ICF = ICF Incorporated, LLC (Support provided through NIEHS Contract Number GS00Q14OADU417/HHSN273201600015U).
ILS = Integrated Laboratory Systems, Inc. (Support provided through subcontract number 16EDBO0078 with ICF).
ORoC = Office of the Report on Carcinogens, DNTP, NIEHS.
Peer Review

Peer review of the Draft RoC Monograph on Haloacetic Acids Found as Drinking Water Disinfection By-Products was conducted by an ad hoc expert panel at a public meeting held July 24, 2017, in the Rodbell Auditorium at the National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences, David P. Rall Building, Research Triangle Park, NC (see http://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/go/38854 for materials, minutes, and panel recommendations from meeting). The selection of panel members and conduct of the peer review were performed in accordance with the Federal Advisory Committee Act and Federal policies and regulations. The panel members served as independent scientists, not as representatives of any institution, company, or governmental agency.

The charge to the Peer-Review Panel was as follows:

1. Comment on whether the Draft RoC Monograph on Haloacetic Acids Found as Water Disinfection By-Products is technically correct, clearly stated, and objectively presented.
2. Provide opinion on whether there is currently or was in the past significant human exposure to haloacetic acids found as disinfection by-products.

The Panel was asked to vote on the following questions:

1. Whether the scientific evidence supports the NTP’s conclusions on the level of evidence for carcinogenicity from cancer studies in animals for six individual haloacetic acids found as water disinfection by-products.
2. Whether the scientific evidence supports the NTP’s preliminary policy decision on the listing status of six individual haloacetic acids found as water disinfection by-products.

The monograph has been revised based on NTP’s review of the Panel’s peer-review comments. The Peer-Review Panel Report, which captures the Panel recommendations for listing status of haloacetic acids found as water disinfection by-products in the RoC and their scientific comments, are available on the Peer-Review Meeting webpage for haloacetic acids (http://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/go/38854).
Peer-Review Panel Members

Weihsueh Chiu (Chair)  
Professor  
Department of Veterinary Integrative Biosciences  
College of Veterinary Medicine and Biomedical Biosciences  
Texas A&M University  
College Station, TX

Lawrence H. Lash, PhD  
Professor and Associate Chair  
Wayne State University School of Medicine  
Detroit, MI

Mathias Attene Ramos, PhD  
Associate Professor  
Department of Environmental and Occupational Health  
George Washington University  
Washington, DC

Consolato Sergi, MD, PhD, MPH, FRCPC  
Professor, Medicine and Dentistry  
Laboratory Medicine and Pathology  
University of Alberta  
Edmonton, Alberta, Canada

Julia H. Carter, PhD  
President and Chairman  
Cell Physiologist  
Wood Hudson Cancer Research Laboratory  
Newport, KY

Susan C. Tilton, PhD  
Assistant Professor, Environmental and Molecular Toxicology  
Oregon State University  
Corvallis, OR

Shahid Parvez, PhD  
Assistant Professor, Environmental Health Science  
Richard M. Fairbanks School of Public Health  
Indiana University–Purdue University Indianapolis  
Indianapolis, IN

Stephen M. Roberts, PhD  
Director and Professor  
Center for Environmental and Human Toxicology  
University of Florida  
Gainesville, FL
Table of Contents

1 Properties ...................................................................................................................................1
  1.1 Haloacetic acids identified in disinfected water ...............................................................1
  1.2 Physical and chemical properties ......................................................................................3

2 Human Exposure ........................................................................................................................7
  2.1 Water treatment and formation of disinfection by-products .............................................7
  2.2 Factors that affect formation of disinfection by-products .................................................8
    2.2.1 Characteristics of source water .............................................................................9
    2.2.2 Characteristics of disinfection methods ..............................................................10
    2.2.3 Effects of time, temperature, pH, and other factors on formation of HAAs ..........11
    2.2.4 Chemistry of formation of haloacetic acids during water disinfection with chlorine-containing disinfectants ........................................................................12
  2.3 Remediation of HAAs .....................................................................................................12
  2.4 Formation in swimming pools and spas and other domestic uses .................................14
  2.5 Point-of-use disinfection .................................................................................................14
  2.6 Other uses of haloacetic acids .........................................................................................14
  2.7 Exposure to HAAs ..........................................................................................................15
    2.7.1 Occurrence of haloacetic acids in treated water .................................................15
    2.7.2 Correlation of haloacetic acids and trihalomethanes in treated water ...............18
    2.7.3 Potential exposure from beverages prepared with treated water .......................19
    2.7.4 Potential exposure from foods ............................................................................19
    2.7.5 Potential exposure from other sources ................................................................20
    2.7.6 Overall potential for exposure to HAAs .............................................................21
  2.8 Summary and synthesis ...................................................................................................22

3 Disposition and Toxicokinetics ...............................................................................................23
  3.1 Absorption .......................................................................................................................23
    3.1.1 Human studies .....................................................................................................23
    3.1.2 Laboratory animal studies ...................................................................................24
  3.2 Distribution .......................................................................................................................25
    3.2.1 Blood concentration-time profiles ......................................................................25
    3.2.2 Blood:plasma ratios and protein binding ............................................................25
    3.2.3 Volume of distribution ........................................................................................26
    3.2.4 Tissue distribution ...............................................................................................26
  3.3 Metabolism and excretion .................................................................................................27
    3.3.1 Trihaloacetic acid metabolism and excretion .....................................................28
    3.3.2 Dihalo- and monohaloacetic acid metabolism and excretion .............................29
  3.4 Toxicokinetic data ...........................................................................................................30
    3.4.1 Human studies .....................................................................................................30
    3.4.2 Experimental animal studies ...............................................................................31
  3.5 Summary and synthesis ...................................................................................................33

4 Studies of Cancer in Experimental Animals ............................................................................37
  4.1 Overview of the studies .................................................................................................37
  4.2 Study quality assessment .................................................................................................39
4.3 Neoplastic findings from carcinogenesis studies .......................................................... .43
4.3.1 Liver (see Table C-8 in Appendix C) ................................................................. .43
4.3.2 Other tumors (see Tables C-9 and C-10 in Appendix C) ..................................... .49
4.3.3 Transgenic studies ......................................................................................... .52
4.3.4 Initiation-promotion studies ........................................................................... .53
4.4 Synthesis ............................................................................................................. .54
5 Human Cancer Studies ................................................................................................. .57
5.1 Cohort Study ..................................................................................................... .57
5.2 Other human cancer studies of disinfection by-products ..................................... .57
5.3 Preliminary level of evidence conclusion ............................................................... .58
6 Mechanistic and Other Relevant Data ............................................................................. .61
6.1 Electrophilicity ................................................................................................... .61
6.2 Alteration of cellular metabolism ....................................................................... .62
6.3 Induction of oxidative stress .............................................................................. .64
6.4 Genotoxicity and/or alteration of DNA repair .................................................... .65
6.4.1 Mutagenic and genotoxic effects .................................................................. .66
6.4.2 Mutagenic and genotoxic potency ................................................................. .70
6.5 Induction of epigenetic alterations ...................................................................... .72
6.6 Modulation of receptor-mediated effects ............................................................. .73
6.7 Inhibition of GST-ζ ........................................................................................... .74
6.8 Cell immortalization ............................................................................................ .75
6.9 Alteration of cell proliferation and cell death ....................................................... .75
6.10 Induction of chronic inflammation or immunosuppression ................................ .76
6.11 Effects on gene expression ................................................................................ .77
6.12 Mode of action integration and synthesis ............................................................. .78
7 Evaluation of Haloacetic Acids as a Class or Subclass(es) ............................................. .83
7.1 Approach and methods ....................................................................................... .83
7.1.1 Approach for evaluating haloacetic acids as a class ..................................... .84
7.1.2 Approach for evaluating subclasses of haloacetic acids ............................... .84
7.1.3 Approach for evaluating haloacetic acids for a potential analogue approach .... .84
7.2 Evaluation of haloacetic acids as a class ............................................................... .85
7.3 Potential haloacetic acid subclasses ...................................................................... .88
7.4 Individual di- and tribromohaloacetic acids .......................................................... .90
7.4.1 Metabolism and toxicokinetics ...................................................................... .91
7.4.2 Carcinogenicity data ..................................................................................... .91
7.4.3 Supporting mechanistic data ......................................................................... .92
7.4.4 Conclusions .................................................................................................. .92
8 Overall Cancer Evaluation and Preliminary Listing Recommendation........................ .95
8.1 Evidence of carcinogenicity from studies in experimental animals ...................... .95
8.2 Summary of mechanistic data and read-across approach .................................... .96
8.3 Preliminary listing recommendation ..................................................................... .96
References .................................................................................................................. .99
Abbreviations .............................................................................................................. 137
Glossary ..........................................................145
RoC Profile for Haloacetic Acids ..........................P-1

**List of Tables**

Table 1-1. Structures of 13 haloacetic acids (HAA) present in disinfected water ..................2
Table 1-2. Properties of haloacetic acids ..........................................................5
Table 2-1. Effects of sources of bromide and iodide in source water on HAA formation ........10
Table 2-2. Comparison of water disinfection methods ..........................................11
Table 2-3. Methods for remediation of HAAs .....................................................13
Table 2-4. Concentration ranges for mono-, di-, and trihaloacetic acids in tap water, finished drinking water, and other similar sources .........................16
Table 3-1. ADME information for haloacetic acids in general and for trihaloacetic and dihaloacetic acids as a class ..................................................35
Table 3-2. ADME information for individual haloacetic acids ..................................36
Table 4-1. Overview of cancer studies in experimental animals ..............................38
Table 4-2. Quality evaluations of cancer studies in experimental animals ...............40
Table 4-3. Hepatocellular neoplasms in mice exposed to bromine-containing haloacetic acids ...46
Table 4-4. Results from cancer studies in experimental animals ..........................55
Table 5-1. Haloacetic acid exposure and kidney ..................................................59
Table 6-1. Electrophilic properties of haloacetic acids .........................................62
Table 6-2. Summary of the mutagenic and genotoxic effects of haloacetic acids ......69
Table 6-3. Transcriptome pathways in human cells induced by monohaloacetic acids ..........77
Table 6-4. Possible modes of carcinogenic action for haloacetic acids and the 10 characteristics of carcinogens .................................................................79
Table 7-1. Comparison of relative potency estimates for mechanistic endpoints and chemical properties of haloacetic acids ..................................................86
Table 7-2. Evaluation of subclasses of haloacetic acids .........................................89
Table 7-3. Tumor profiles in source chemicals and predicted tumor profiles in target chemicals 92
Table 8-1. Evidence of cancer in experimental animals ........................................96

**List of Figures**

Figure 1. Organization of information in the RoC monograph for HAAs ..........................v
Figure 2-1. Conventional water treatment flow diagram ...........................................8
Figure 2-2. Major factors affecting the formation of halogenated disinfection by-products ...9
Figure 2-3. National HAA5 occurrence data for 1997 through 2014 .........................17
Figure 2-4. HAA5 occurrence data for 2006 through 2011 from USEPA Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA) national compliance monitoring for the third Six-Year Review (SYR3) ..........................................................17
Figure 2-5. Correlation data for HAAs and trihalomethanes in treated water ..............19
Figure 3-1. Oral bioavailability and peak blood concentration (C_{max}) of di- and trihaloacetic acids in rats .................................................................24
Figure 3-2. Mean absorption time (MAT) and time to peak blood concentration (T_{max}) of di- and trihaloacetic acids in rats .......................................................24
Figure 3-3. Oral bioavailability of dichloroacetic acid in naïve and GST-ζ-depleted rats ....25
Figure 3-4. General metabolic pathways for tri- and dihaloacetic acids ..................................................27
Figure 3-5. Comparison of renal (Cl\textsubscript{r}) and nonrenal (Cl\textsubscript{nr}) clearance of an equimolar i.v. dose (500 μmol/kg) of haloacetic acids in male rats ..........................................................31
Figure 3-6. Clearance of dichloroacetic acid in naïve and GST-ζ-depleted male rats..............................31
Figure 3-7. Clearance of dihaloacetic acids (A) and trihaloacetic acids (B) administered as mixtures of di- and trihaloacetic acids at equimolar i.v. doses (25 μmol/kg) to male rats ..........................................................32
Figure 3-8. Stereospecific clearance of an i.v. dose (520 μmol/kg) of (−), (+)bromochloroacetic acids administered to naïve and GST-ζ-depleted male rats ..........................................................32
Figure 4-1. Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) in female and male mice exposed to di- and trihaloacetic acids (HAAs) ..............................................................................................................47
Figure 4-2. Hepatoblastoma in male mice exposed to di and trihaloacetic acids (HAAs) ......................48
Figure 4-3. Malignant mesothelioma incidence in male rats exposed to bromochloroacetic acid (BCA), dibromoacetic acid (DBA), or bromodichloroacetic acid (BDCA) in drinking water ..........................................................50
Figure 6-1. Inhibition of GAPDH and PDK by haloacetic acids and effects on glucose metabolism .................................................................................................................................63
Figure 6-2. Relative potency of haloacetic acids to induce oxidative stress in human cancer cell lines; (A) monohaloacetic acid, (B) di- and trihaloacetic acids. ..................................................65
Figure 6-3. Relative potency of haloacetic acids to induce oxidative damage in mouse liver in vivo .................................................................................................................................................65
Figure 6-4. Relative genotoxicity potency estimates of haloacetic acids in the SOS-umuC assay .............................................................................................................................................71
Figure 6-5. Relative genotoxicity potency estimates of haloacetic acids in bacteria and mammalian cells .................................................................................................................................72
Figure 6-6. Interactions of potential modes of action and key events associated with haloacetic acid-induced carcinogenicity .................................................................................................................................81
Major factors affecting the formation of halogenated disinfection by-products ..........................P-11
1 Properties

Water disinfection is among the most important and beneficial public health advances of the 20th century in the United States and worldwide (Calderon 2000). Disinfection of water has substantially reduced the incidence of cholera, typhoid, and amoebic dysentery caused by waterborne pathogens and has contributed to decreases in infectious diseases and increases in life expectancy (Richardson et al. 2007). The use of chlorine-based disinfection methods for public water supplies began in the early 1900s in the United States (EPA 2000). Beginning in the 1970s, the formation of disinfection by-products (DBPs) in water due to the reaction between organic precursors in the source water and disinfection agents, primarily chlorine-based, was recognized as a concern (CDC 2016). Since that first discovery, more than 500 unique DBP molecules have been identified, including many different halogen-containing molecules such as haloacids. The two major classes of DBPs by weight are trihalomethanes and haloacetic acids.

1.1 Haloacetic acids identified in disinfected water

Haloacetic acids all share a common structure with acetic acid as the parent compound, thus these molecules consist of two carbons, including a carboxylic acid and an alpha carbon. A total of 34 different mono- (4 molecules), di- (10 molecules), and trihaloacetic acids (20 molecules) can be formed by replacement of one or more of the 3 hydrogens on the alpha carbon with members of the halogens class, which include fluorine, chlorine, bromine, and iodine. No fluorine-containing haloacetic acids have been identified as water disinfection by-products, likely because the energy required to form these molecules is higher than the oxidation potential of the disinfectants in current use (chlorine, chloramine, ozone, and chlorine dioxide) (Richardson 2016, personal communication to NTP on September 7, 2016). Thirteen haloacetic acids containing chlorine, bromine, or iodine or a combination of these halogens have been identified in disinfected water and these are discussed in this document (Table 1-1).

In 1998, USEPA first regulated the sum of five haloacetic acids (HAA5) in drinking water (chloroacetic acid, bromoacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid, dibromoacetic acid, and trichloroacetic acid) (Federal Register 1998). In 2016, USEPA required monitoring for four additional haloacetic acids (bromochloroacetic acid, bromodichloroacetic acid, chlorodibromoacetic acid, and tribromoacetic acid) in the Fourth Unregulated Contaminant Monitoring Rule (UCMR4) (Federal Register 2016) to encompass a group of haloacetic acids collectively referred to as HAA9.

Four HAAs containing one or more iodine atoms have been detected in treated water, but they are not currently regulated in the United States. Iodoacetic acid and bromoiodoacetic acid were identified in drinking water for the first time by Weinberg et al. (2002). In other laboratory studies of water treatment and uses of treated water, Smith et al. (2010b) showed that diiodoacetic acid was formed in water treated by point-of-use disinfection with iodine tincture, and Becalski et al. (2006) showed that chloroiodoacetic acid was formed from boiling chlorinated tap water with iodized table salt. The 13 HAAs identified in treated water (see Table 1-1) will be discussed in this monograph.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Halogen</th>
<th>Mono-HAA</th>
<th>Di-HAA</th>
<th>Tri-HAA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chlorine</td>
<td>Monochloroacetic acid (MCA)</td>
<td>Dichloroacetic acid (DCA)</td>
<td>Trichloroacetic acid (TCA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromine</td>
<td>Monobromoacetic acid (MBA)</td>
<td>Dibromoacetic acid (DBA)</td>
<td>Tribromoacetic acid (TBA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iodine</td>
<td>Monoiodoacetic acid (MIA)</td>
<td>Diiodoacetic acid (DIA)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorine and bromine</td>
<td>Bromochloroacetic acid (BCA)</td>
<td>Bromodichloroacetic acid (BDCA)</td>
<td>Chlorodibromoacetic acid (CDBA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iodine and chlorine or bromine</td>
<td>Bromoiidoacetic acid (BIA)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Chloroiidoacetic acid (CIA)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.2 Physical and chemical properties

The halogens – fluorine, chlorine, bromine, and iodine – are reactive elements that form a family or group of elements in the periodic table; however, fluorine-containing haloacetic acids are not considered further in this monograph as noted in Section 1.1. The presence of halogen atoms affects the reactivity of a haloacetic acid, particularly the reactivity of the alpha carbon to which the halogens are attached and the ionizability of the carboxylic acid. Physical-chemical properties of the halogens that affect the reactivity of the haloacetic acids include electronegativity, polarizability, the physical size of these atoms, and related properties such as the strength of the bond between the halogen and a carbon atom and the potential of a halogen to act as a leaving group.

Electronegativity is defined as the tendency of an atom or functional group to attract electrons from other atoms in a molecule. The electronegativity of the halogens decreases with increasing atomic number moving down the periodic table from chlorine to bromine to iodine. The presence of one or more halogen atoms in a haloacetic acid will affect (1) the strength of the negative charge resulting from ionization of the carboxylic acid, (2) the magnitude of the negative log of the acid dissociation constant (pKₐ) of the carboxylic acid, and (3) the reactivity of the alpha carbon in a substitution reaction. Thus, the physical-chemical characteristics of each haloacetic acid depends on the type and number of halogen atoms in the molecule.

The toxic potency of the monohaloacetic acids correlates highly with their electrophilic reactivity or alkylating potential and the quality of the halogen as a leaving group (Plewa et al. 2004a, Pals et al. 2011). The atomic size of the three halogens from smallest to largest is Cl < Br < I, and the length of the carbon-hydrogen bond increases in the same order while the bond dissociation energy decreases (Plewa et al. 2004a). The quality of each halogen as a leaving group also increases from chlorine to bromine to iodine and is related to the polarizability of the halogen atom (i.e., the ability of the electrons in the atom to distort or shift due to external influences) and delocalization of the electron cloud (i.e., the spatial distribution of electrons shared among the atoms in a molecule). Both polarizability and delocalization are highest for iodine among the halogens.

An important substitution reaction mechanism in organic chemistry consists of the breaking of one bond and the simultaneous formation of another between reacting molecules. This mechanism is described as “substitution, nucleophilic, with 2 molecules in the rate-determining step” and is commonly abbreviated as SN₂. The SN₂ reactivity of the monohaloacetic acids increases from chloride to bromide to iodide (Plewa et al. 2004a).

Three physical-chemical properties likely to be related to the toxicity of the HAAs because they describe the ability of the molecules to enter cells and their potential reactivity with other molecules within a cell are the octanol-water partition coefficient (log Kᵥw), the pKₐ, and the energy of the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital for the deprotonated form of the HAAs that exists in solution at physiological pH (ELUMO) (Table 1-2). At physiological pH, all of the haloacetic acids will exist in their ionized form, but the pKₐ also indicates the strength of the acid form which increases as pKₐ decreases. The relationship between these physical-chemical properties and the toxicity and potential mechanisms of carcinogenicity of haloacetic acids as a class is discussed further in Section 7.2. QSAR models using these physical-chemical properties have shown significant correlations with endpoints such as the cytotoxicity and genotoxicity of...
HAAs when two parameters, usually $E_{\text{LUMO}}$ and $pK_a$, are used in combination but not when either parameter was used by itself (Richard and Hunter 1996, Plewa et al. 2004b, Schultz et al. 2006, Plewa et al. 2010, Pals et al. 2011, Stalter et al. 2016b).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Haloacetic acid</th>
<th>CAS No.</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Molecular weight</th>
<th>Solubility in water (g/100 mL)&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Vapor pressure (mm Hg)&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Dipole moment (Debye units)&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Octanol-water partition coefficient (log $K_{ow}$)&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Dissociation constant ($pK_a$)&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Energy of lowest unoccupied molecular orbital, $E_{lumo}$ (eV)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chloroacetic acid</td>
<td>79-11-8</td>
<td>C$_2$H$_3$ClO$_2$</td>
<td>94.5</td>
<td>85.8</td>
<td>0.065</td>
<td>2.716</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>2.97</td>
<td>9.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromoacetic acid</td>
<td>79-08-3</td>
<td>C$_2$H$_3$BrO$_2$</td>
<td>138.9</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>0.119</td>
<td>2.722</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>2.96</td>
<td>8.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iodoacetic acid</td>
<td>64-69-7</td>
<td>C$_2$H$_3$IO$_2$</td>
<td>185.9</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>1.794</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>2.95</td>
<td>7.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dichloroacetic acid</td>
<td>79-43-6</td>
<td>C$_2$H$_2$Cl$_2$O$_2$</td>
<td>128.9</td>
<td>100 (at 20°C)</td>
<td>0.179</td>
<td>1.284</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>1.41</td>
<td>8.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dibromoacetic acid</td>
<td>631-64-1</td>
<td>C$_2$H$_2$Br$_2$O$_2$</td>
<td>217.8</td>
<td>211</td>
<td>0.023</td>
<td>1.048</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>1.39</td>
<td>7.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diiodoacetic acid</td>
<td>598-89-0</td>
<td>C$_2$H$_2$I$_2$O$_2$</td>
<td>311.8</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>2.163</td>
<td>1.3&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromochloroacetic acid</td>
<td>5589-96-8</td>
<td>C$_2$H$_2$BrClO$_2$</td>
<td>173.4</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>0.61</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>7.78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloroiodooacetic acid</td>
<td>53715-09-6</td>
<td>C$_2$H$_2$IClO$_2$</td>
<td>220.4</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>6.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromoiodoacetic acid</td>
<td>71815-43-5</td>
<td>C$_2$H$_2$BrI$_2$O$_2$</td>
<td>264.8</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>1.67</td>
<td>6.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trichloroacetic acid</td>
<td>76-03-9</td>
<td>C$_2$HCl$_3$O$_2$</td>
<td>163.4</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>1.564</td>
<td>1.33</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>7.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribromoacetic acid</td>
<td>75-96-7</td>
<td>C$_2$HBr$_3$O$_2$</td>
<td>296.7</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.00028</td>
<td>1.552</td>
<td>1.71</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>6.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromodichloroacetic acid</td>
<td>71133-14-7</td>
<td>C$_2$HBrCl$_2$O$_2$</td>
<td>207.8</td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>0.036</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>6.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorodibromoacetic acid</td>
<td>5278-95-5</td>
<td>C$_2$HBr$_2$ClO$_2$</td>
<td>252.3</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.0052</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>1.62</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>6.42</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Reported at 25°C (298.15°K) unless noted otherwise.

<sup>b</sup>PubChem 2017, except chloroacetic acid, bromoacetic acid, and dichloroacetic acid from ChemIDplus 2017.

<sup>c</sup>Pérez-Garrido et al. 2008.

<sup>d</sup>Stalter et al. 2016b unless noted otherwise; deprotonated form.

<sup>e</sup>PubChem 2016a.
2 Human Exposure

A significant number of people living in the United States are exposed to haloacetic acids formed as water disinfection by-products because of the widespread use of chlorine-containing disinfectants for water treatment. As noted in the previous section, water disinfection in the United States and worldwide has provided major public health benefits through decreases in infectious diseases and increases in life expectancy that result from providing safe, clean drinking water.

According to the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), over 48,000 U.S. public water systems provide disinfected water to more than 250 million people, while 10% to 15% of the U.S. population uses private groundwater wells that are typically not disinfected (EPA 2005, 2015a, 2015b). Thus, the majority of the U.S. population is exposed to mono-, di- and trihaloacetic acids found as water disinfection by-products. Ingestion of chlorinated drinking water is the most common exposure route for haloacetic acids (HAAs) for the general public, but inhalation and dermal exposure also can occur. The chemical and physical properties of HAAs (i.e., low volatility and high polarity) limit inhalation and dermal exposures and ingestion accounted for about 94% of total exposure for swimmers in chlorinated swimming pools (Kim and Weisel 1998, Cardador and Gallego 2011) (see Section 3.1.1). Other potential sources of exposure to HAAs for the general public include consumption of beverages prepared with treated water either in the home or commercially, consumption of food prepared with treated water, accidental ingestion of swimming pool or spa water by heavy swimmers or spa users, and in some limited circumstances from point-of-use disinfection. Information on potential occupational exposure to HAAs is limited, but exposure to swimming pool attendants at indoor and outdoor pools has been documented.

2.1 Water treatment and formation of disinfection by-products

The presence of HAAs in the United States is well established, but knowledge of the chemical and physical processes that lead to their formation is important to help control their levels as required by law. Source water, either groundwater or surface water, contains organic carbon that reacts with chlorine-based disinfectants. Elevated levels in source water of bromide and iodide from anthropogenic and natural sources will likely shift production of HAAs during water disinfection toward more brominated and iodinated species. Minimizing the content of HAAs in finished water provided to consumer is an important goal, and the best current strategy for remediation of HAAs is prevention or reduction of their production. This generally involves reducing the potential precursors present as organic carbon in the source water, but manipulation of conditions for disinfection, such as choice of disinfectant, dose, contact time with water, temperature, and pH can also be effective means to reduce formation. Research into the chemical reactions and intermediate molecules formed also contributes to greater understanding of the process of formation and how to control it.

Water disinfection is regulated by the U.S. EPA through Surface Water Treatment Rules (SWTRs) that established maximum contaminant level goals (MCLGs) for viruses, bacteria, such as *Legionella*, and other organisms such as the protozoa species *Giardia lamblia* and *Cryptosporidium*. The purpose of water treatment is to remove contaminants and disease-causing agents from drinking water (CDC 2015). The most common steps in conventional water
treatment are (1) coagulation and flocculation, (2) sedimentation, (3) filtration, (4) disinfection, and (5) storage (see Figure 2-1) (CDC 2015, EPA 2016a). In disinfection, application of oxidants (chlorine, chloramine, chlorine dioxide, or ozone) or ultraviolet (UV) light kills disease-causing microorganisms or renders them inactive. Reverse osmosis is another non-chemical water purification method, but its primary use is at the household level rather than by community water treatment facilities other than at desalination plants.

| Coagulation and flocculation | Addition of chemicals to source water to allow particles to bind together and form larger particles called floc |
| Sedimentation | Transfer of floc particles to basins where they either settle to the bottom or are removed by skimming |
| Filtration | Passage of water through porous media to remove particles remaining from sedimentation |
| Disinfection | Application of oxidants |
| Storage | Holding of treated water in a tower or tank to allow time for disinfection to occur |

**Figure 2-1. Conventional water treatment flow diagram**
Sources: CDC 2015, EPA 2016a

### 2.2 Factors that affect formation of disinfection by-products

The factors (see Figure 2-2) that determine the type and amount of disinfection by-products formed during water treatment include (1) the presence of organic matter and inorganic matter in the source water, which is subject to daily as well as seasonal variation in concentration, (2) the disinfesting chemicals used, and (3) the length of time the organic matter is exposed to the disinfesting chemicals, the temperature at which the disinfection process takes place, and the pH of the water during the disinfection process. The organic molecules in source water are often extremely large, complex molecules and intermediate molecules will form as a result of exposure to disinfesting chemicals; further reaction with those chemicals during the disinfection process and storage will result in formation of halogenated by-products, including haloacetic acids.
Figure 2-2. Major factors affecting the formation of halogenated disinfection by-products

Organic molecules in source water plus naturally occurring or anthropogenic bromide and iodide react with various chlorine-containing disinfecting chemicals to form halogenated intermediate molecules and ultimately the halogenated HAAs. HOBr = hypobromous acid; HOCl = hypochlorous acid; HOI = hypoiodous acid; NOM = natural organic matter.

2.2.1 Characteristics of source water

The major characteristic of the source water that determines the formation of disinfection by-products is the type and quantity of potentially reactive natural organic matter (NOM) and the inorganic halogen precursors, bromide and iodide. The organic matter found in either surface or groundwater consists of a mixture of organic compounds derived from sources such as terrestrial plants, microbially derived from algae and bacteria, or from anthropogenic sources. The latter class includes pesticides, pharmaceuticals, personal care products, and newer materials such as carbon nanotubes (Nelson 2015). The molecules of NOM in source water that react with chloride, bromide, and sometimes iodide to form HAAs range from very complex, e.g., humic and fulvic acids, to simple amino acids and dicarbonyl acids (Reckhow and Singer 1985, Reckhow et al. 2001, Zhai and Zhang 2011).

Anthropogenic and natural sources of bromide and iodide (see Table 2-1) can increase concentrations of these halide ions in source waters (e.g., due to incomplete removal or non-removal in wastewater treatment plants) and create brominated and iodinated HAAs and other disinfection by-products such as trihalomethanes and bromate (McTigue et al. 2014). Elevated levels of bromide and iodide in source water will likely shift production of HAAs during water disinfection toward brominated and iodinated species.
### Table 2-1. Effects of sources of bromide and iodide in source water on HAA formation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Effect on bromide or iodide ion concentration</th>
<th>Effect on disinfection by-product formation</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coal-fired electric power plants</td>
<td>Increased bromide ion concentration power plant wastewater discharges</td>
<td>Increased brominated HAA species&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>McTigue &lt;i&gt;et al.&lt;/i&gt; 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil and gas production</td>
<td>Bromide ion concentration increased from &lt; 0.02 mg/L [&lt; 20 µg/L] upstream of oil and gas CWT&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt; to 75 mg/L [75,000 µg/L] downstream of CWT</td>
<td>Downstream concentration of DBCNM&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt; ranging from 5.7 µg/L–8.7 µg/L</td>
<td>Hladik &lt;i&gt;et al.&lt;/i&gt; 2014&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bromide ion concentration in publicly owned treatment works and CWT discharges</td>
<td>Increased brominated disinfection by-product formation&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Hammer and VanBriesen 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seawater intrusion</td>
<td>Bromide concentration increased from 38 µg/L to 974 µg/L as seawater content increased from 0% to 2%</td>
<td>HAA9 concentration increased from 39 µg/L to 75 µg/L and disinfection by-product formation shifted from chlorine-containing to bromine-containing species</td>
<td>Ged and Boyer 2014&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seawater desalination</td>
<td>Saudi Arabia, Red Sea coast: Bromide concentration in seawater = 60 mg/L [60,000 µg/L]; iodide concentration = 0.05 mg/L [50 µg/L]</td>
<td>Reported HAA9 concentration range in chlorinated seawater = 5.35 µg/L–6.86 µg/L</td>
<td>Kim &lt;i&gt;et al.&lt;/i&gt; 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>United States, Tampa Bay: Bromide concentration range in seawater = 49 mg/L–56 mg/L [49,000 µg/L–56,000 µg/L]</td>
<td>Reported HAA5 concentration range in chlorinated seawater = 69 µg/L–175 µg/L</td>
<td>Kim &lt;i&gt;et al.&lt;/i&gt; 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iodinated x-ray contrast media</td>
<td>Various iodinated x-ray contrast media (iopamidol, iohexol, and iopromide) dissolved in raw river water at concentrations ranging from 3,880 µg/L–4,100 µg/L</td>
<td>Iodoacetic acid concentrations ranged from 0.5 nM to 9.6 nM [0.09 µg/L–1.8 µg/L]</td>
<td>Duirk &lt;i&gt;et al.&lt;/i&gt; 2011&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>No quantitative data on increases in brominated HAA data were reported.
<sup>b</sup>CWT = commercial wastewater treatment plant.
<sup>c</sup>DBCNM = dibromochloronitromethane.
<sup>d</sup>No data on finished water haloacetic acids were reported.
<sup>e</sup>Laboratory chlorination study.
<sup>f</sup>Concentration reported as 5 µM for all contrast media.

### 2.2.2 Characteristics of disinfection methods

The choice of disinfection methods is generally based on their effectiveness, including their continued presence as a secondary disinfectant in the water distribution system, their overall cost, and their ease of use by water treatment facilities, but chlorine-containing chemical disinfection is by far the most widely used approach in the United States. The major disinfection methods, i.e., chlorine as either a gas (Cl₂), liquid (NaOCl), or solid (Ca(OCl)₂) form; chloramine; chlorine dioxide; ozone; and ultraviolet (UV) irradiation are generally effective as a primary disinfectant. A comparison of the major factors differentiating these disinfection methods is provided in Table 2-2.
### Table 2-2. Comparison of water disinfection methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disinfectant</th>
<th>Efficacy as primary disinfectant</th>
<th>Residual disinfection in distribution system</th>
<th>Total HAAs formation</th>
<th>Other DBPs formed</th>
<th>Ease of use; cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chlorine (Cl₂, HOCl, OCl⁻)</td>
<td>High to intermediate</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>THMs, HANsᵃ</td>
<td>Easiest method to use for HOCl/OCl⁻; least expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloramine (NH₂Cl)</td>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>Y (more effective that chlorine alone)</td>
<td>Intermediate (~1/3 level formed with chlorine)ᵇ</td>
<td>HANsᵃ</td>
<td>Requires additional equipment to add ammonia; slightly more expensive than chlorine alone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorine dioxide (ClO₂)</td>
<td>High to intermediate</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Intermediate (less than 1/2 level formed with chlorine)ᵇ</td>
<td>Chlorite &amp; chlorate (ClO₂ breakdown products)</td>
<td>Requires more technical skill &amp; requires secondary disinfection; more expense for equipment and chemicals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ozone (O₃)</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Low (generally only in presence of Br⁻)</td>
<td>Bromate</td>
<td>Requires more technical skill &amp; requires secondary disinfection; more expense for equipment and chemicals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UV irradiation</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Requires more technical skill and training &amp; requires secondary disinfection; more expense for equipment and chemicals</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HAN = haloacetonitrile; TOC = total organic carbon.

ᵃ IPCS 2000.

### 2.2.3 Effects of time, temperature, pH, and other factors on formation of HAAs

The initial reaction of chlorine with NOM results in rapid formation of HAAs during approximately the first 4 to 8 hours with approximately 90% of the final concentrations of trichloroacetic acid and dichloroacetic acid formed during the first 24 hours after chlorine is added to water. Formation of dibromoacetic acid may not level off until 18 to 20 hours after chlorination begins. In general, the formation rates for HAAs increase with increasing temperature. Effects of pH on HAA formation can vary, depending on which chlorine species (i.e., hypochlorous acid or hypochlorite ion) predominates. For example, the more active form of chlorine, hypochlorous acid, is present at higher concentrations below pH 7.5 than above. Thus, increasing pH has been associated with decreasing concentrations of HAAs (IPCS 2000). The water disinfection process can be described by the product (CT) of chlorine concentration (C) times contact time (T) (SDWF 2009). Chlorine must be added until competing pathways with reducing compounds in the source water and the combination of chlorine with other molecules...
are saturated with chlorine and a free chlorine residual is present at what is referred to as the breakpoint for chlorination. Beyond the breakpoint, the remaining free chlorine will disinfect the water and provide a residual for secondary disinfection during storage and distribution.

2.2.4 Chemistry of formation of haloacetic acids during water disinfection with chlorine-containing disinfectants

Proof of the concept that interaction of chlorine-containing disinfectants with natural organic substances in source water can result in formation of HAAs has been achieved by laboratory experiments demonstrating formation of halogenated intermediate molecules that give rise to HAAs from samples of humic acid. Reaction pathways of the reactive forms of chloride with organic matter include oxidation, addition, and electrophilic substitution reactions (Deborde and von Gunten 2008), and most reactions between chlorine and humic acids within NOM result in oxidation of humic acids rather than chlorine substitution (Dickenson et al. 2008).

Research on formation of HAAs and other disinfection by-products supports the formation of a number of potential intermediate molecules from precursors in natural organic matter in source water (Reckhow and Singer 1985, Reckhow et al. 2001, Zhai and Zhang 2011). These smaller intermediate molecules, mostly organic acids (but also substituted phenolic compounds), can give rise to HAAs (Dickenson et al. 2008, Bond et al. 2012).

2.3 Remediation of HAAs

Remediation of haloacetic acid disinfection by-products can be divided into three general approaches: (1) removal of precursors (i.e., NOM) prior to disinfection, (2) modification of disinfection practices (e.g., altering disinfectant dose, type, or application point in the water treatment process), and (3) removal of disinfection by-products after formation. Table 2-3 summarizes potential methods for remediation of HAAs before, during, and after the water treatment process.

EPA (2006) reported that 9.6% of plants of all sizes in the United States treating surface water used granular activated carbon (GAC) while only 0.9% of the plants treating ground water used GAC. GAC has been shown to remove 38.5% to 91.2% of bromide ion from water in bench-scale and pilot-scale experiments (Zhang et al. 2015b), thus reducing potential formation of brominated HAAs. Biologically active carbon (BAC), i.e., GAC with a natural bacteria population on its surface, was able to remove up to 100% of HAAs by biodegradation while ozonation removed only 10% to 20% (Ratasuk et al. 2008). BAC was much more effective than sterilized GAC, which would remove HAAs only by adsorption.

The use of home water filters, either pitchers with filters, faucet filters, or whole-house systems, have become more common. A report on home water treatment by EPA (2005) indicated that more than 4 in 10 homes have some form of home water treatment unit. A study of the effectiveness of point-of-use water filters (Stalter et al. 2016a) concluded that removal of halogenated disinfection by-products by activated carbon-based tap water filters could provide a public health benefit.
## Table 2-3. Methods for remediation of HAAs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remediation process</th>
<th>Method description</th>
<th>Effectiveness/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Removal of precursors prior to disinfection</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coagulation</td>
<td>Addition of metallic salts, e.g., alum, that neutralize negative charges on particles so they agglomerate and precipitate to remove precursors</td>
<td>15%–78% removal of precursors by alum coagulation; (typically 15%–20%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ion exchange</td>
<td>Exchange of ions between aqueous solution and solid phase, e.g., resin, to remove precursors</td>
<td>52%–72% removal of precursors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Membrane filtration</td>
<td>Size exclusion, electrostatic repulsion, and differences in solute diffusion rates across membranes to remove precursors</td>
<td>67%–99% removal by nanofiltration, which is most effective for removal of hydrophilic, low-molecular weight precursors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activated carbon filtration</td>
<td>Reversible physical adsorption by non-specific forces with preferential removal of hydrophobic NOM</td>
<td>60%–91% removal of precursors by granular activated carbon (GAC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biotreatment (biologically activated carbon)</td>
<td>Enzyme-controlled microbial degradation and adsorption involving growth of a biofilm on sand or activated carbon filter media</td>
<td>Up to 62% removal by bioactive sand; TCA precursors more biodegradable than DCA precursors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced oxidation processes (AOPs)</td>
<td><em>In situ</em> generation of highly reactive hydroxyl radicals to degrade precursors through fast, non-selective reactions with organic compounds. May include ozone plus UV, ozone plus hydrogen peroxide, or UV plus hydrogen peroxide</td>
<td>Up to 83% removal by O$_3$/UV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ozone</td>
<td>Oxidation, bond cleavage, and hydroxyl radical reactions preferentially with aromatic compounds, alkenes, and amines</td>
<td>Relatively ineffective at low ozone concentrations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Modified disinfection practices</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eliminating pre-oxidation or changing the pre-oxidation chemical, e.g., using potassium permanganate, hydrogen peroxide, or ozone as a pre-oxidant rather than pre-chlorination</td>
<td>No data found on percent effectiveness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Removal of HAAs after formation</strong></td>
<td>Filtration using biologically active granular activated charcoal</td>
<td>Up to 99% at early stage of operation (via physical adsorption) but decreased over 3.5 month time period; removal again increased up to 99% after 6 months (via biodegradation)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.4 Formation in swimming pools and spas and other domestic uses

The disinfection of water for swimming pools and spas also results in formation of HAAs but often at higher levels than in disinfected tap water because of the use of a higher chlorine residual and higher temperatures than in typical water distribution systems (Parinet et al. 2012, Chowdhury et al. 2014). Dichloroacetic acid and trichloroacetic acid are the most abundant HAAs detected in swimming pools (Teo et al. 2015). For U.S. swimming pools disinfected with chlorine, dichloroacetic acid concentrations have been reported to range from 52 μg/L to 6,800 μg/L, and trichloroacetic acid concentrations from 76 μg/L to 1,900 μg/L (Kanan 2010). Additional human precursors (e.g., sweat, urine, hair, cosmetics) can affect the speciation of disinfection by-products formed in swimming pools (Richardson and Postigo 2015). The levels of HAA9 in seawater swimming pools treated with chlorine bleach as disinfectant ranged from 417 μg/L to 2,233 μg/L for different pools tested (Parinet et al. 2012). However, the levels of individual HAAs were generally highest for brominated HAAs, i.e., bromoacetic acid, bromochloroacetic acid, dibromoacetic acid, bromodichloroacetic acid, and chlorodibromoacetic acid, consistent with the presence of bromide in sea water.

The active ingredient in common household bleach is sodium hypochlorite, which is also used in some systems for water disinfection. Thus, use of bleach containing hypochlorite for household cleaning and laundry can produce haloacetic acids and other disinfection by-products observed in disinfected drinking water (EU 2007).

2.5 Point-of-use disinfection

Most laboratory studies of disinfection by-product formation from point-of-use disinfection report trihalomethane occurrence data; only limited data were identified for HAA formation (Lantagne et al. 2008, Lantagne et al. 2010, Smith et al. 2010b, Werner et al. 2016). Iodoacetic acid levels of 9.7 nM to 22.9 nM [1.8 μg/L to 4.3 μg/L] have been reported from use of iodine tincture; bromoiodoacetic acid and diiodoacetic acid were also detected, but were not quantified because they were below method detection limits (Smith et al. 2010b).

2.6 Other uses of haloacetic acids

Several haloacetic acids have had limited uses medically or in research laboratories; the more extensive commercial uses are listed below. Dichloroacetic acid is used as a chemical manufacturing intermediate (e.g., for glyoxylic acid), in polyethylene terephthalate production, as a skin cauterezing agent, as a medicinal disinfectant (e.g., a substitute for formalin), as a treatment for congenital lactic acidosis, and it has been proposed as a targeted cancer therapeutic agent (IARC 2014a). The main use of trichloroacetic acid in the past was as an herbicide; however, all registrations for this use in the United States were voluntarily canceled by 1992 (some existing stock may have been used after that date). Trichloroacetic acid also has other industrial uses (e.g., surface treatment of metals), and is widely used as a laboratory reagent and as a treatment for dermatological diseases. Chloroacetic acid is used in the manufacture of organic chemicals including cellulose ethers (used mainly for drilling muds, detergents, food, and pharmaceuticals), glycine, thioglycolic acid, dyes, synthetic caffeine, and as a post-emergence contact herbicide and defoliant (PubChem 2016b). Tribromoacetic acid has been used in organic synthesis (HSDB 2009c). Diiodoacetic acid has been used as a chemical intermediate (PubChem 2005). Bromoacetic acid has been used for organic synthesis and abscission of citrus.
fruit (HSDB 2009). Iodoacetic acid has been used as a food additive and as an intermediate in pharmaceuticals, herbicides, antipyretic, anti-inflammatory, and analgesics (HSDB 2003). Dibromoacetic acid and bromochloroacetic acid were reported to be used only in research (IARC 2013c).

2.7 Exposure to HAAs

Exposure to HAAs as disinfection by-products affects almost all people living in the United States because the vast majority of water treatment facilities use chlorine-based disinfection methods due to their ease of use and low cost. In addition to ingesting HAAs by drinking plain tap water, humans can also be exposed to HAAs from other beverages prepared with treated water such as tea or coffee or fruit drinks and soft drinks or by ingesting food that came in contact with treated water. Foods, both canned and fresh, are generally washed with or soaked in treated water and are cooked in treated water. Dermal and inhalation exposure from swimming pools and spas where water is disinfected and from occupational exposure also can occur. Occupational exposures to some HAAs can also occur.

Eleven of the 13 HAAs discussed in this monograph have been identified in disinfected water (see Section 2.3.1); the remaining two are iodinated molecules formed under experimental conditions. Haloacetic acids (HAAs) and trihalomethanes (THMs) are the largest groups of water disinfection by-products measured and about 25% to 50% of total halogenated disinfection by-products are measured (Krasner et al. 2006, Krasner et al. 2016b). Both HAAs and total trihalomethanes (TTHMs) are regulated by the USEPA, and epidemiological studies have tended to use TTHMs as a surrogate for disinfection byproduct exposures. HAAs are generally correlated with TTHMs but the ratio between these disinfection by-products may vary depending on water source and methods of disinfection. Relevant epidemiological studies measuring internal exposure to HAAs are not available, in part because of the lack of a specific marker.

2.7.1 Occurrence of haloacetic acids in treated water

The highest levels of HAAs have been detected for the molecules chloroacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid, trichloroacetic acid, chlorobromoacetic acid, and bromodichloroacetic acid (Table 2-4). The presence of chlorine atoms in these molecules is expected since chlorination is overwhelmingly the most commonly used water disinfection method in the United States and estimates indicate that about 98% of U.S. water treatment systems use some type of chlorine disinfection process such as chlorine, chlorine dioxide, or chloramine (American Chemistry Council 2016). As described above, a number of sources (Table 2-1) for increased bromide concentrations in source water have been identified.

National occurrence data from the American Water Works Association (AWWA) for HAA5 (the sum of five HAAs – bromoacetic acid, dibromoacetic acid, chloroacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid, and trichloroacetic acid – for 1997 through 2014 and representing 93% of U.S. systems serving populations greater than 100,000 people (collected to assess impacts of the USEPA Stage 2 Disinfectants and Disinfection By-products Rule [DBPR]) indicate that 95th percentile HAA5 concentrations have displayed a generally decreasing trend since 2000 (largely due to plants switching from chlorine to chloramines for disinfection) and have been at or below the USEPA maximum contaminant level (MCL) of 60 µg/L for HAA5 since 2004 (Seidel et al. 2017). Figure
2-3 presents this information. There is some evidence that smaller facilities have more difficulty in meeting the regulatory limits. Data from the USEPA collected under the Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA) national compliance data for the third Six-Year Review (SYR3) for 2006 to 2011 indicated that systems serving fewer than 10,000 people had a 95th percentile HAA5 concentration that remained above the HAA5 60 µg/L MCL throughout the period studied whereas the 95% percentile was below the MCL for systems serving more than 100,000 people (see Figure 2-4). In addition, the 10 highest levels reported for HAA5 based on data from the Environmental Working Group (EWG 2016) were facilities serving fewer than 4,000 persons.

Table 2-4. Concentration ranges for mono-, di-, and trihaloacetic acids in tap water, finished drinking water, and other similar sources

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mono, di-, or trihaloacetic acid</th>
<th>Range (µg/L)</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chloroacetic acid</td>
<td>3 (1–11)a</td>
<td>EPA 2016b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromoacetic acid</td>
<td>1.6 (0.59–7.3)a</td>
<td>EPA 2016b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iodoacetic acid</td>
<td>Up to 1.7</td>
<td>Richardson et al. 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dichloroacetic acid</td>
<td>10.4 (1.3–32)</td>
<td>EPA 2016b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dibromoacetic acid</td>
<td>2.1 (0.63–12)</td>
<td>EPA 2016b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diiodoacetic acid</td>
<td>–d</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorobromoacetic acid</td>
<td>Up to 1.7</td>
<td>Richardson et al. 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloriodoacetic acid</td>
<td>0–approx. 10e</td>
<td>McGuire et al. 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromodichloroacetic acid</td>
<td>5.28–12.2</td>
<td>HSDB 2009b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorodibromoacetic acid</td>
<td>BDL c–5.37</td>
<td>HSDB 2009d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aMedian (5th percentile–95th percentile).
cBelow detection limit; detection limit not specified.
dNo data identified.
eOne extreme value of ~ 20 µg/L was reported.
Figure 2-3. National HAA5 occurrence data for 1997 through 2014

Source: Adapted from Seidel et al. 2017.
Data are presented for 5th, 25th, 50th, 75th and 95th percentiles for each year from 1997 to 2014 for U.S. water systems supplying more than 100,000 people.
Dashed horizontal line = HAA5 maximum contaminant (MCL) of 60 µg/L.

Figure 2-4. HAA5 occurrence data for 2006 through 2011 from USEPA Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA) national compliance monitoring for the third Six-Year Review (SYR3)

Source: EPA 2016b.
Data are presented for 5th, 25th, 50th, 75th and 95th percentiles for each year from 1997 to 2014 for U.S. water systems supplier more than 100,000 people. Dashed horizontal line = HAA5 maximum contaminant (MCL) of 60 µg/L.

### 2.7.2 Correlation of haloacetic acids and trihalomethanes in treated water

In the majority of reported studies, total HAAs (THAA) have been found to correlate with total trihalomethanes (TTHM); correlation coefficients ranging from −0.6 to 0.92 in the majority of studies although a few studies found lower rates, mostly between 0.4 and 0.6 with one outlier of 0.1 (see Figure 2-5). While TTHMs and THAAs or HAA5 have been the primary surrogate measure used in epidemiological studies to estimate exposure to disinfection by-products, concern has been raised for how well these substances can represent the hundreds of disinfection by-products in treated water (Parvez et al. 2011, Plewa and Wagner 2015). No data were identified for correlations between either THMs or HAAs and other disinfection by-products. However, THMs and HAAs are expected to be inversely related to some emerging disinfection by-products (e.g., N-nitrosodimethylamine [NDMA] and iodinated disinfection by-products) because chloramination maximizes their formation and vastly reduces the formation of THMs and HAAs.

The ratio of HAAs to THMs is usually around 1:1 but can be higher or lower depending on source water characteristics and disinfection conditions (e.g., Singer et al. [2002] reported that lower chlorination pH tends to favor HAA9 formation while higher pH favors THM formation) (Roberts et al. 2002, Singer et al. 2002, Weinberg et al. 2002, Liang and Singer 2003, Villanueva et al. 2003a, Krasner et al. 2006, Chang et al. 2010a, Roccaro et al. 2014). Individual studies with different ratios between HAAs and THMs suggest as much as a 4-fold spread for the ratio (i.e., ranging from 2:1 for THAA to TTHM [Villanueva et al. 2003a] to 1:2 for the same comparison [Roccaro et al. 2014]).
2.7.3 Potential exposure from beverages prepared with treated water

Beverages that are prepared in the home, such as tea, coffee, or infant formula, or commercially, such as fruit juices and soft drinks, may be prepared with treated water. Several HAAs, primarily dichloroacetic acid, chloroacetic acid, dibromoacetic acid, and bromochloroacetic acid, are quite stable in boiling water with losses of less than 20% after 60 minutes (Raymer and Michael 2010), so home-prepared tea or coffee would have levels of HAAs similar to those in tap water. Cardador and Gallego (2015) measured levels of 10 HAAs in 2 100% juice products (0.07 µg/L to 0.08 µg/L), 37 reconstituted juices (mean = 4.5; 0.5 µg/L to 31 µg/L), 32 nectar juices (mean = 6.7; 0.2 µg/L to 22 µg/L), and 55 soft drinks (mean = 12; 0.3 µg/L to 73 µg/L) sold in Spain. The mean for soft drinks was increased by inclusion of tonic water (mean = 40.2 µg/L) and soda water (mean = 33.5 µg/L) which had higher levels than other drinks sampled.

2.7.4 Potential exposure from foods

HAAs may be present in natural foods in relatively low amounts, but preparation of food by rinsing before or after cooking or cooking in treated water may add to the levels. Another potential source of HAAs is reaction of iodide in iodized table salt with chlorine in tap water to
form hypiodous acid (HOI), which can react with residual organic matter in tap water and organic matter from food to form iodinated disinfection by-products (Becalski et al. 2006, Pan et al. 2016).

Solid and liquid phases of canned vegetables can contain disinfection by-products from contact with treated water and chemicals used in the canning process (e.g., washing, sanitizing, blanching, and filling with sauces or brine solutions) (Cardador and Gallego 2016). HAAs have been found to be predominant in the liquid phase, which is consistent with their ionic and non-volatile characteristics.

A limited range of six foods — chicken, three vegetables, dried beans, and pasta — were cooked in purified water, which would not be expected to contain disinfection by-products, and analyzed for nine HAAs; all six foods contained dichloroacetic acid (31 ng/g to 100 ng/g) and trichloroacetic acid (19 ng/g to 81 ng/g) with one to five other HAAs also detected (Raymer and Michael 2010). During controlled laboratory experiments reported by Raymer and Michael, several foods (frozen carrots and green beans, dried pinto beans, chicken, spaghetti, and lettuce) were cooked in haloacetic acid-spiked water, and uptake of the total HAAs available in the cooking water into the food was reported to be as high as 85% (for uptake of dibromoacetic acid by dried pinto beans) although uptake was generally in the range of 2% to 25% for other foods and HAAs. Raymer and Michael also estimated intakes of HAAs from food based on the uptake of HAAs from water containing the MCL of 60 µg/L and reported 3.75 µg per serving for cooked green beans and 6 µg per serving for cooked pasta.

Foods, both canned and fresh, are generally washed with or soaked in treated water and are cooked in treated water. The median amounts of HAAs expressed in µg per kg of food range from less than 1 µg/kg for milk to greater than 10 µg/kg for soft drinks, prepared salads, and minimally processed vegetables such as fruits or vegetables washed with chlorine-based chemicals in water (Cardador and Gallego 2016). Canned vegetables, fruit juices, and cheese fall between these levels. Canned vegetables generally contain several-fold higher levels of HAAs in the liquid phase than the solid phase because of their ionic and polar nature.

2.7.5 Potential exposure from other sources

Occupational exposure to swimming pool attendants

No data were found for other potential occupational exposures to HAAs, but limited information was found for exposure to swimming pool attendants. HAAs are neither volatile nor appreciably skin permeable (Xu et al. 2002, Regli et al. 2015), but studies of haloacetic acid exposure from indoor and outdoor swimming pools indicate that limited inhalation and dermal exposure also can occur (e.g., ingestion ~94% contribution, inhalation ~5%, and dermal ~1%) (Cardador and Gallego 2011). The authors also reported that HAAs (mostly dichloroacetic acid) can get into the atmosphere of indoor swimming pools through aerosols in ambient air and be inhaled.

The HAAs mono-, di-, and trichloroacetic acid have been measured in the urine of swimmers, and di- and trichloroacetic acid have been measured in the urine of swimming pool attendants (Kim and Weisel 1998, Cardador and Gallego 2011, IARC 2014). After 2 hours of exposure, indoor pool attendant urine samples contained 313 ng/L [0.313 µg/L] dichloroacetic acid and 120 ng/L [0.120 µg/L] trichloroacetic acid (Cardador and Gallego 2011). After 4 hours, indoor
attendant urine samples contained 450 ng/L [0.45 µg/L] dichloroacetic acid and 139 ng/L [0.139 µg/L] trichloroacetic acid. Outdoor pool attendant urine samples contained 51 ng/L [0.051 µg/L] dichloroacetic acid after 2 hours of exposure and 58 ng/L [0.058 µg/L] dichloroacetic acid after 4 hours of exposure. No trichloroacetic acid was detected in the urine of outdoor pool attendants.

Releases to the environment

Although some haloacetic acids, such as trichloroacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid, and chloroacetic acid have some uses in industry or medicine, only chloroacetic acid (of the 13 haloacetic acids being reviewed) is on the Toxics Release Inventory (TRI) reporting list for 2015 (the most recent year for which TRI data are available). Total reported on- and off-site release of chloroacetic acid was approximately 5,470 pounds from 19 U.S. facilities in 2015 (TRI 2017). Calculations based on media-specific release data from TRI indicate that releases to air accounted for 94.8% of total releases, off-site disposal for 4.6%, and land for 0.6%.

2.7.6 Overall potential for exposure to HAAs

Individuals living in the United States are exposed to HAAs primarily from drinking treated tap water or other beverages prepared from treated water with additional exposure likely from foods that are prepared using treated water. Consumption of water from all foods and liquids per day has been estimated by CDC (Rosinger and Herrick 2016) to be 3.46 L for men over 20 and 2.75 L for women over 20. The contribution from plain water, i.e., tap water, is approximately 1/3 (33.3%) of the total. The Institute of Medicine estimates that 20% of total water consumption is derived from foods, and the remaining 46.7% would derive from beverages such as tea, coffee, soft drinks, and fruit drinks.

No data were identified that provided overall estimates for consumption of HAAs; however, based on the MCL for HAA5, and assuming that all water consumed contained HAAs at that level, total water consumption would result in exposure to approximately 210 µg per day for men and 165 µg per day for women in the United States. Data for U.S. water facilities serving communities of all sizes in 2011 indicate a median value for HAA5 of 20.1 µg/L with the 5th percentile at 2.0 µg/L and the 95th percentile at 59.0 µg/L. The median exposure would therefore be about 69 µg per day (5% to 95% = 6.9 µg to 204 µg per day) for men and 55 µg per day (5% to 95% = 5.5 µg to 162.2 µg per day) for women. At the median exposure and above, these levels will likely overestimate actual exposure for most people since the data reported above for beverages such as fruit drinks and soft drinks and for foods prepared with treated water suggest lower concentrations of HAAs compared with the typical water supply. In addition, any effort to determine total consumption of HAAs would need to take into account consumption of bottled water and point-of-use filtration methods in the home (Wright et al. 2006).

Relatively few data on potential exposure to HAAs from other sources such as swimming pools and spas; cooking and food; and point-of-use disinfection have been found, but the following information has been identified:

- HAAs form in swimming pools or spas disinfected with chlorine-based disinfectants and detectable levels of both dichloroacetic acid and trichloroacetic acid have been reported in swimming pool water and in urine samples from swimming pool attendants.
• Data were identified for HAAs in only a few foods, but each of the HAA9 components was detected in one or more common foods cooked in purified water that would not be expected to contain HAAs.

• Use of HAA-spiked water to cook food or to rinse food after cooking resulted in measurable uptake of HAAs. Estimates of possible intakes from such uptakes indicate several µg per serving could be consumed due to cooking food with treated water.

• Point-of-use disinfection methods based on iodine-containing disinfectants have been shown to result in formation of HAAs, but the use of these methods is limited.

2.8 Summary and synthesis

Disinfection of water has achieved tremendous public health benefits in the United States and worldwide through reduction in exposure of individuals to disease-causing microorganisms. However, a side effect of water treatment is that over 250,000,000 people in the United States are exposed to chlorinated drinking water, indicating that a significant number of people in the United States are exposed to mono-, di- and trihaloacetic acids found as water disinfection by-products. Ingestion of chlorinated drinking water is the most common exposure route for HAAs, but inhalation and dermal exposure also can occur. Other potential sources of exposure to HAAs include swimming pools and spas, cooking and food, and point-of-use disinfection. Disinfection by-products are formed from the reaction of chemical disinfectants (e.g., chlorine, chloramines, chlorine dioxide, or ozone) with organic precursors, and inorganic precursors (most often certain halide ions, i.e., bromide [Br\(^-\)] or iodide [I\(^-\)]). The primary factors affecting the formation of disinfection by-products are (1) source water quality and characteristics, (2) types and concentrations of precursors, and (3) type of disinfection method and dose.

Anthropogenic and natural sources of bromide and iodide can increase concentrations of these halide ions in source waters (e.g., due to incomplete removal or non-removal in wastewater treatment plants) and create brominated and iodinated HAAs and other disinfection by-products such as trihalomethanes and bromate.

Remediation of haloacetic acid disinfection by-products can be divided into three general approaches: (1) removal of precursors prior to disinfection, (2) optimization or modification of disinfection practices (e.g., altering disinfectant type, dose, or application point in the water treatment process), and (3) removal of disinfection by-products after formation.
3 Disposition and Toxicokinetics

Disposition and toxicokinetics refer to how a chemical can enter and leave the body, what happens to it once it is in the body, and the rates of these processes. Disposition includes absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion (ADME: Sections 3.1 to 3.3) while toxicokinetics (Section 3.4) refers to the mathematical description of the time course of disposition of a chemical in the body. A synthesis of the data is provided in Section 3.5.

Overall, the data indicate that the haloacetic acids are well absorbed following oral exposure, widely distributed, and excreted unchanged or as metabolites in the urine, or exhaled as carbon dioxide (CO₂). However, there are marked differences in disposition among these compounds that are related to both the number and types of halogen atom substitutions. Disposition studies in humans were available only for dichloro- and trichloroacetic acid while disposition data in experimental animals were available for most of the chlorinated and/or brominated acetic acids as well as some mixtures of these compounds. No disposition studies were identified for the iodinated acetic acids. The mechanistic implications of these data are discussed in Section 6.

3.1 Absorption

Haloacetic acids are rapidly and extensively absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract in humans and experimental animals (NTP 1992, EPA 2003, IARC 2004a, 2004b, NTP 2007a, 2009, EPA 2011a, IARC 2013a, 2013b, 2014a, 2014b, NTP 2015). Dermal absorption also occurs, but it is a minor route of exposure compared with ingestion. Absorption studies in humans and experimental animals are briefly reviewed below.

3.1.1 Human studies

Ingestion is the primary exposure pathway for di- and trihaloacetic acids because their chemical and physical properties (i.e., low volatility and high polarity) limit inhalation and dermal exposures (Kim and Weisel 1998, Cardador and Gallego 2011). Peak plasma concentrations were reached within 15 minutes to 1.5 hours following ingestion (Curry et al. 1991, Rogers 1995, Stacpoole et al. 1998, Kim et al. 1999, Froese et al. 2002, Cardador and Gallego 2011). However, oral bioavailability of dichloroacetic acid in human volunteers (8 men and 8 women) was highly variable (27% to 100% of a single 2 mg/kg dose) but less than 10% when administered at 20 µg/kg for 14 days (Schultz and Shangraw 2006).

Cardador and Gallego (2011) reported that ingestion accounted for about 94% of the total exposure while inhalation (from aerosol droplets) contributed about 5% and dermal routes about 1% in swimmers (adults and children) and workers exposed to haloacetic acids in outdoor and indoor swimming pools. However, di- and trihaloacetic acids are detectable in urine 5 to 30 minutes after wading or swimming in chlorinated swimming pools (Kim and Weisel 1998, Cardador and Gallego 2011).

Dermal permeability coefficients calculated for dichloro- and trichloroacetic acid in human subjects were very low (0.00002 to 0.008 cm/h) (Kim and Weisel 1998). The in vitro permeability coefficients of chloro-, dichloro-, trichloro-, bromo-, bromochloro-, and dibromoacetic acids in aqueous solution across human skin using diffusion chambers were also very low (0.0011 to 0.0026 cm/h) with lag times of 3.7 to 6.5 hours and the authors concluded...
that the dermal dose from bathing in water containing these haloacetic acids would be insignificant compared to the estimated ingestion dose (Xu et al. 2002). Cases of accidental exposure to monochloroacetic acid show that it is readily absorbed through the skin and is corrosive to tissues (Kusch et al. 1990, Kulling et al. 1992).

### 3.1.2 Laboratory animal studies

All haloacetic acids administered orally to rats individually or in mixtures were detected in plasma within minutes after oral dosing (Schultz et al. 1999, Saghir and Schultz 2002, 2005). Oral bioavailability, mean absorption time, peak blood concentration, and time to peak blood concentration for di- and trihaloacetic acids in rats are shown in Figures 3-1 and 3-2. These data indicate that oral bioavailability was at or near 100% for trichloro-, bromodichloro-, and chlorodibromoacetic acid but was lower (30% to 81%) for dibromo-, bromochloro-, tribromo-, and dichloroacetic acid due to greater first pass metabolism (Schultz et al. 1999). The oral bioavailability of bromodichloroacetic acid in mice ranged from 28% to 73% and was lower than reported in rats (Merdink et al. 2001). The bioavailability of chloroacetic acids in rats was 100% (Saghir and Rozman 2003). Saghir and Schultz (2002) also showed that the oral bioavailability of dichloroacetic acid increased with dose and also increased in glutathione S-transferase-zeta (GST-ζ)-depleted rats due to decrease in GST-ζ mediated metabolism (see Figure 3-3 and Section 3.3). Maximum blood concentrations generally occurred around 1 hour for all di- and trihaloacetic acids, with the exception of dichloroacetic acid (8 hours) (Schultz et al. 1999). Maximum blood concentrations (molar basis) for the trihaloacetic acids were about 1.5 to 6 times greater than the corresponding dihaloacetic acids and reflect the relative bioavailability.

![Figure 3-1. Oral bioavailability and peak blood concentration (C_{max}) of di- and trihaloacetic acids in rats](image1)

Source: Schultz et al. 1999

![Figure 3-2. Mean absorption time (MAT) and time to peak blood concentration (T_{max}) of di- and trihaloacetic acids in rats](image2)

Source: Schultz et al. 1999
Rats rapidly absorbed (within 15 minutes) over 95% of the applied dermal dose of monochloroaetic acid from the site of application (Saghir and Rozman 2003). However, much of the absorbed monochloroaetic acid was sequestered in deeper skin layers and served as a “depot” for continued absorption over the course of several hours. No other dermal studies were identified.

3.2 Distribution

The degree of reversible plasma protein binding for haloacetic acids is concentration-, species-, and haloacetic acid-dependent. Haloacetic acids show rapid and uniform distribution outside the vascular system to all body tissues with tissue:blood partition coefficients of the unbound fraction generally close to unity. Blood concentration-time profiles, blood:plasma ratios, plasma protein binding, volume of distribution, and tissue distribution data are discussed below.

3.2.1 Blood concentration-time profiles

Following i.v. dosing in rats, the blood concentrations of di- and trihaloaetic acids (brominated and chlorinated forms) show a short distribution phase followed by a rapid log-linear decline with most concentrations reaching the detection limit within 12 hours (Schultz et al. 1999). Trichloroaetic acid was an exception with detectable blood concentrations after 24 hours. A similar pattern was seen after oral dosing; however, the dihaloaetic acids, particularly dichloroaetic acid, displayed a more complex plasma concentration-time profile characterized by multiple peaks appearing long after the initial absorption phase (Schultz et al. 1999, Saghir and Schultz 2002, 2005). This pattern was not due to enterohepatic recirculation (Schultz et al. 1999). Discontinuous absorption (i.e., region-dependent absorption) from the GI tract was proposed as a possible explanation (Saghir and Schultz 2002). The data suggest that dichloroaetic acid, and possibly other dihaloaetic acids, were absorbed in the upper portion of the GI tract to a higher degree than the trihaloaetic acids (Saghir and Schultz 2002, 2005).

3.2.2 Blood:plasma ratios and protein binding

Blood:plasma ratios in rats were close to unity for the dihaloaetic acids and indicate near equal distribution between erythrocytes and plasma (Schultz et al. 1999). Blood:plasma concentration
ratios for trihaloacetic acids were lower (0.66 to 0.82) and indicate preferential distribution to plasma. Monochloroacetic acid did not show significant binding to erythrocytes or hemoglobin but did bind to plasma proteins (Kaphalia et al. 1992).

Dihaloacetic acids exhibited much lower plasma protein binding in rats (6% to 11% bound) compared to trihaloacetic acids (50% to 80% bound) (Schultz et al. 1999). In addition, *in vitro* studies of trichloroacetic acid (doses of 0.01 µg/mL to 1,000 µg/mL) found that humans have higher plasma binding capacity (75% to 87%) compared to rats (38% to 67%), dogs (54% to 65%), or mice (19% to 55%) (Templin et al. 1995, Lumpkin et al. 2003). The higher binding capacity in humans was attributed to more binding sites and slightly higher albumin concentrations (Lumpkin et al. 2003). Higher plasma protein binding increases residence time in the blood and reduces the proportion available for uptake by the tissues. Binding of trichloroacetic acid to plasma proteins is also nonlinear due to partial saturation of plasma binding at high doses in humans, rats, and mice (Yu et al. 2000, Lumpkin et al. 2003).

Both trichloro- and dichloroacetic acid formed adducts to hemoglobin and albumin in rats and mice, but much of the label associated with protein adduction could be accounted for by metabolic incorporation into the amino acid pool and subsequent *de novo* protein synthesis (Stevens et al. 1992). Mice incorporated a greater portion of the label into proteins than rats, which is consistent with a greater metabolic rate in the mouse. In contrast, Styles et al. (1991) did not find evidence of covalent binding of trichloroacetic acid to DNA or plasma proteins, and very little covalent binding was detected in the liver of mice.

### 3.2.3 Volume of distribution

Schultz and co-workers tested seven haloacetic acids in rats and did not find any statistically significant difference in steady-state apparent volume of distribution (ranging from 400 mL/kg to 881 mL/kg) (Schultz et al. 1999). This range of values is comparable to the total body water volume of rats, suggesting that haloacetic acids evenly distribute outside of the vasculature and are not highly sequestered in peripheral tissues (Schultz et al. 1999). In addition, the similar volume of distribution across haloacetic acids, despite large differences in plasma protein binding, suggests that differences in protein binding are matched in peripheral tissues. Similarly, mice exposed i.v. to 5 mL/kg to 100 mg/kg of bromodichloroacetate had a steady-state volume of distribution of about 380 mL/kg to 518 mL/kg (also consistent with distribution to total body water) and a blood:plasma ratio of 0.88 (Merdink et al. 2001). However, the volume of distribution for dichloroacetic acid in humans (190 mL/kg to 337 mL/kg following 10 mg/kg or 20 mg/kg i.v., respectively) was much lower than in rats (932 mL/kg, 100 mg/kg dose) and is consistent with greater plasma protein binding in humans (Lukas et al. 1980).

### 3.2.4 Tissue distribution

Abbas and Fisher (1997) reported tissue:blood partition coefficients ranging from 0.54 (lung) to 1.18 (liver) for trichloroacetic acid in mice. Following oral doses of various mixtures of mono-, di- and trihaloacetic acids, tissue concentrations were close to plasma concentrations and indicated a rapid equilibrium between plasma and tissues (Saghir and Schultz 2005). Monochloro- and monoiodoacetic acid distributed rapidly to peripheral tissues, particularly to organs that are rich in sulfhydryl groups, such as the liver and kidney (Hayes et al. 1973, Kaphalia et al. 1992). Distribution patterns were comparable at low (0.1 mmole/kg or ~9.5
mg/kg) and high doses (1 mmole/kg or ~95 mg/kg) of chloroacetic acid in rats (Kaphalia et al. 1992). Saghir et al. (2001) also reported rapid distribution of chloroacetic acid to tissues but distribution was slower at a toxic dose (75 mg/kg) compared to a non-toxic dose (10 mg/kg) in male rats. Overall, these data suggest that tissue:blood partition coefficients of haloacetic acids are close to unity and that they distribute uniformly without any significant sequestering in fat or peripheral tissues.

### 3.3 Metabolism and excretion

Metabolism of haloacetic acids is complex but is qualitatively similar in humans and experimental animals (Stacpoole et al. 1998, EPA 2003, IARC 2004a, 2004b, EPA 2011a, IARC 2014a, 2014b). A generalized metabolic scheme is shown in Figure 3-4. Although haloacetic acids share common metabolic pathways and metabolites, there are substantial differences in the extent of biotransformation and elimination between compounds and between species. These inter- and intraspecies differences in metabolism and metabolic capacity may explain differences in susceptibility to toxic effects of haloacetic acids. For example, mice have a higher capacity to metabolize dichloroacetic acid compared to rats (Larson and Bull 1992, Gonzalez-Leon et al. 1999).

![Figure 3-4. General metabolic pathways for tri- and dihaloacetic acids](image)

GSTZ1 = glutathione S-transferase zeta 1, THM = trihalomethane.

The haloacetic acids fall into three broad groups based on their metabolism and renal clearance (Schultz et al. 1999, Saghir and Schultz 2005). These groups are broadly described as (1) low metabolism with moderate renal clearance (e.g., trichloroacetic acid), (2) moderate to high metabolism and high renal clearance (e.g., brominated trihaloacetic acids), and (3) high metabolism and low renal clearance (e.g., dihaloacetic acids). Because of the marked differences in the metabolism of various haloacetic acids, the metabolism and excretion of trihaloacetic acids and dihalo- and monohaloacetic acids are reviewed in separate subsections.

### 3.3.1 Trihaloacetic acid metabolism and excretion

Trihaloacetic acids are metabolized primarily by the microsomal fraction, but metabolism also occurs in the cytosolic subcellular fraction (Austin and Bull 1997, Saghir and Schultz 2005). Cytochrome P450 (CYP)-catalyzed reductive de-halogenation of trihaloacetic acids generates a dihaloacetic acid via a free radical intermediate and is then further metabolized by GSTs or can undergo further reductive dehalogenation to form a monohaloacetic acid (discussed in more detail below) (see Figure 3-4) (Stacpoole et al. 1998, Merdink et al. 2000, Saghir and Schultz 2005, Saghir et al. 2011). There is limited evidence for the direct decarboxylation of bromodichloroacetic acid to form CO$_2$ and a trihalomethane (Xu et al. 1995, Austin and Bull 1997). Pharmacokinetic simulations suggest that dichloroacetic acid forms slowly from trichloroacetic acid and is then rapidly metabolized and eliminated, resulting in generally nondetectable levels of dichloroacetic acid in the blood (Merdink et al. 1998).

Trichloroacetic acid is the least metabolized haloacetic acid in humans and experimental animals. Allen and Fisher (1993) estimated that in humans, 93% of trichloroacetic acid was excreted unchanged in urine while Paykoc and Powell (1945) reported that about 75% of an i.v. dose (1.5 to 3 g) administered to 6 patients was excreted unchanged in the urine after 10 days. Metabolism data in rats and mice show that about 45% to 84% of trichloroacetic acid is excreted unchanged in the urine after 24 to 48 hours, and the percent of unchanged trichloroacetic acid in the urine increases with dose (Green and Prout 1985, Larson and Bull 1992, Xu et al. 1995, Schultz et al. 1999, Yu et al. 2000). Metabolites detected in the urine of rodents exposed orally to trichloroacetic acid include dichloroacetic acid, monochloroacetic acid, glyoxylic acid, glycolic acid, oxalic acid, and some unidentified metabolites and accounted for only 7% to 13% of the administered dose (Larson and Bull 1992, Xu et al. 1995). About 4% to 15% was metabolized to CO$_2$ and about 1% to 8% was excreted in the feces (Green and Prout 1985, Larson and Bull 1992, Xu et al. 1995, Yu et al. 2000).

The metabolism of other trihaloacetic acids (i.e., bromodichloro-, chlorodibromo-, and tribromoacetic acid) was somewhat different from the pattern seen with trichloroacetic acid and indicates that bromine substitution enhances metabolism (Xu et al. 1995, Schultz et al. 1999). Mice administered 5, 20, or 100 mg/kg bromodichloroacetic acid eliminated 0% to 4% unchanged in the urine, 42% to 45% as urinary metabolites (primarily oxalate), 15% to 30% as CO$_2$, and 6% to 10% in the feces (Xu et al. 1995, Merdink et al. 2001). The large difference in urinary excretion of bromodichloroacetic acid between mice and rats was attributed to a more efficient renal tubular reabsorption mechanism and a greater rate of metabolism in mice compared to rats (Merdink et al. 2001).

*In vitro* data using rat or human microsomes showed that the rate of metabolism of brominated trihaloacetic acids (i.e., bromodichloro-, chlorodibromo-, and tribromoacetic acid) was directly
proportional to the number of bromines on the molecule and was further enhanced under reduced oxygen tensions that approximated tissue oxygen levels (Saghir et al. 2011). The brominated trihaloacetic acids were rapidly metabolized by liver microsomes to the dihaloacetic acid product corresponding to loss of a single bromine ion. Reduced oxygen tension (2% oxygen or nitrogen atmosphere) also enhanced the metabolic rate (2% oxygen was selected to be representative of tissue oxygen tension). Reductive dehalogenation of tribromoacetic acid produced dibromoacetic acid in a 1:1 molar ratio with the Br\(^{−}\) liberated and there was no evidence of additional metabolism. However, the amount of dibromoacetic acid formed only accounted for about 50% of the consumption of tribromoacetic acid, particularly at higher substrate concentrations, and suggests the possibility of covalent binding and/or nonmetabolic or degradative loss during chemical analysis.

Metabolism and elimination of haloacetic acids is also affected by exposure to mixtures of haloacetic acids or by pretreatment with dichloroacetic acid or trichloroacetic acid (Austin and Bull 1997, Barton et al. 1999, Gonzalez-Leon et al. 1999, Saghir and Schultz 2005). The primary difference in toxicokinetics of di- and trihaloacetic acids in rats was reduced clearance when administered in mixtures rather than as single compounds (discussed in more detail in Section 3.4) (Schultz et al. 1999, Schultz and Sylvester 2001, Saghir and Schultz 2002, 2005). Urinary recovery of trichloro-, bromodichloro-, chlorodibromo-, and tribromoacetic acid was lower in rats when administered in a mixture and is consistent with increased metabolism at relatively low doses (Saghir and Schultz 2005). However, the data also suggest that metabolism of trihaloacetic acids is possibly increased in mixtures when compared to studies where compounds were administered individually at similar doses.

Pretreatment with trichloroacetic acid inhibited both hepatic cytosolic (up to 70%) and microsomal (up to 30%) metabolism of bromodichloroacetic acid in mice but had little effect on dichloroacetic acid metabolism (Austin and Bull 1997). Pretreatment with dichloroacetic acid inhibited cytosolic metabolism of both dichloro- and bromodichloroacetic acid up to 70% but stimulated microsomal metabolism of bromodichloroacetic acid (1.3 fold); however, there was not a concomitant increase in dichloroacetic acid formation (possibly due to the direct decarboxylation of bromodichloroacetic acid to form CO\(_2\) and bromodichloromethane).

### 3.3.2 Dihalo- and monohaloacetic acid metabolism and excretion

The dihaloacetic acids are extensively metabolized with low amounts of parent compound excreted in the urine (Larson and Bull 1992, Lin et al. 1993, Xu et al. 1995, Gonzalez-Leon et al. 1997, James et al. 1998, Schultz et al. 1999, NTP 2009). In vivo and in vitro studies show that mice have a significantly higher capacity to metabolize dichloroacetic acid than rats (Gonzalez-Leon et al. 1997, Gonzalez-Leon et al. 1999). When administered as part of a mixture of haloacetic acids, urinary elimination of parent dichloro-, bromochloro-, or dibromoacetic acids were all < 0.1% (Saghir and Schultz 2005).

Dihaloacetic acids are primarily metabolized in the cytosol to glyoxylate by a glutathione-dependent process that is catalyzed by GST-\(ζ\) (IARC 2013a, 2013b). The relative rates of glyoxylate formation among the three chlorinated/brominated dihaloacetates are: bromochloro- > dichloro- > dibromoacetic acid (Tong et al. 1998). Glyoxylate can be further metabolized to glycolate, oxylate, glycine, and CO\(_2\) (Figure 3-4). Reductive dehalogenation of dihaloacetic acids to monohaloacetic acids is a minor pathway.
Dichloro-, dibromo-, and bromochloroacetic acid are mechanism-based, irreversible inhibitors of GST-ζ (Anderson et al. 1999, Schultz and Sylvester 2001, Saghir and Schultz 2002). Inhibition of GST-ζ by dihaloacetic acids reduces the extent of metabolism and increases the plasma half-life, and it has been reported in humans, dogs, and rodents (Tong et al. 1998, Anderson et al. 1999, Tzeng et al. 2000, Saghir and Schultz 2002, 2005, Maisenbacher et al. 2013). However, humans have a lower rate of dichloroacetic acid biotransformation by hepatic cytosol than rats or mice (Tong et al. 1998) and human GST-ζ is more resistant to inactivation than rodent or dog GST-ζ (Board and Anders 2011, Maisenbacher et al. 2013). Thus, the use of GST-ζ-depleted rats was shown to be a suitable model for evaluating the kinetics of dichloroacetic acid in humans based on similar in vitro intrinsic metabolic clearance values of low doses in human and rat GST-ζ-depleted liver cytosol (Saghir and Schultz 2002).

In vitro experiments using rat and human hepatic cytosol showed evidence of stereospecific metabolism of bromochloroacetic acid with more rapid elimination of the (−)-bromochloroacetic acid isomer compared to the (+)-bromochloroacetic acid isomer (Schultz and Sylvester 2001). In vivo studies in rats and mice administered a single i.v. dose also showed that the (−) isomer was eliminated about 1.5 to 2.5 times faster than the (+) isomer (NTP 2009). These data suggest that (+)-bromochloroacetic acid is a poor substrate for GST-ζ compared to (−)-bromochloroacetic acid and that another GST isoenzyme may be involved in the metabolism of bromine-substituted dihaloacetic acids.

Several polymorphic variants of GST-ζ have been identified in humans that differ in their susceptibility to inactivation (Fang et al. 2006, Board and Anders 2011, Li et al. 2012). Human liver samples homozygous or heterozygous for GST-ζ 1A exhibited a 3-fold higher capacity to dechlorinate dichloroacetic acid than samples carrying other alleles at a given level of expression (Li et al. 2012). GST-ζ haplotype also influenced dichloroacetic acid kinetics when administered to children with congenital mitochondrial diseases (Shroads et al. 2015). GST-ζ, also known as maleylacetoacetate isomerase (MAAI), is part of the tyrosine catabolism pathway and has been identified as a potential mode of action (see Section 6) (Schultz et al. 2002, Stacpoole et al. 2008, Board and Anders 2011, Stacpoole 2011).

### 3.4 Toxicokinetic data

The toxicokinetic properties of haloacetic acids in humans and experimental animals are reviewed below. The number and type of halogen substitutions, dose, exposure to mixtures, and age influence the biotransformation and elimination kinetics of haloacetic acids.

#### 3.4.1 Human studies

Most of the toxico- or pharmacokinetic data in humans is for dichloroacetic acid and includes healthy subject volunteers and subjects with various diseases (e.g., lactic acidosis, malaria, liver disease) who were administered dichloroacetic acid as a therapeutic treatment. These studies indicate that the pharmacokinetics of dichloroacetic acid are dose dependent, there are no significant differences between men and women, but there are differences between diseased patients and healthy volunteers (see Appendix B, Table B-1). (Lukas et al. 1980, Curry et al. 1985, Curry et al. 1991, Krishna et al. 1994, Krishna et al. 1995, Krishna et al. 1996, Henderson et al. 1997, Schultz and Shangraw 2006). The distribution phase was generally slower and the plasma T½ was longer in diseased patients. The large interindividual differences in haloacetic
acid clearance in humans may be due to polymorphisms that alter GST-ζ activity and expression (Schultz and Shangraw 2006). The urinary excretion half-life of trichloroacetic acid in five healthy volunteers ranged from about 2.1 to 6.3 days and fit a single compartment exponential decay model (Bader et al. 2004). The few human studies that report on the pharmacokinetics of trichloroacetic acid showed a reduced volume of distribution and longer plasma half-life compared to dichloroacetic acid (see Appendix B, Table B-1). Pharmacokinetic modeling of trichloroacetic acid indicates that the volume of distribution is inversely related to body weight, where trihaloacetic acid distributes to about 7% to 14% of body weight in humans, compared to 25% to 51% for rats and 18% to 24% for mice (Allen and Fisher 1993). Systemic clearance of trichloroacetic acid in humans (0.028/hr/kg) also is slower than in rodents (0.045/hr/kg to 0.1/hr/kg). The lower volume of distribution and clearance in humans compared to rodents is likely related to greater plasma protein binding in humans.

3.4.2 Experimental animal studies

Most of the toxicokinetic studies of the haloacetic acids were conducted in male F344 rats (see Appendix B, Table B-2). The data show that the steady-state apparent volume of distribution is similar for di- and tri-haloacetic acids while area under the concentration-time curve and clearance show considerable differences (Schultz et al. 1999). Dihaloacetic acids are primarily eliminated by biotransformation (i.e., nonrenal clearance) with very little parent compound excreted in the urine. As mentioned in Section 3.2, the blood concentration-time profiles for the dihaloacetic acids exhibited multiple peaks that resulted in some uncertainty in the start of the log-linear portion of the profiles and complicated calculations of toxicokinetic parameters. In contrast, trihaloacetic acids exhibited simpler blood concentration-time profiles with reduced metabolism and a higher contribution from renal clearance. Bromine substitution enhanced metabolism and increased both renal and nonrenal clearance, especially for the trihaloacetic acids (Figure 3-5). The combination of a similar distribution volume and increasing clearance with bromine substitution resulted in a progressive decrease in elimination half-lives. The data also show that total dose is an important factor for dihaloacetic acids because clearance is dose-dependent due to saturation and inhibition of the GST-ζ metabolic pathway (Figure 3-6).

Figure 3-5. Comparison of renal (Cl_r) and nonrenal (Cl_nr) clearance of an equimolar i.v. dose (500 µmol/kg) of haloacetic acids in male rats
Source: Schultz et al. 1999

Figure 3-6. Clearance of dichloroacetic acid in naïve and GST-ζ-depleted male rats
Source: Gonzalez-Leon et al. 1997, Saghir and Schultz 2002
When haloacetic acids were administered to rats as mixtures rather than as single compounds, the primary difference was reduced clearance (with the exception of bromochloro- and dibromoacetic acids), suggesting competitive interactions between di- and trihaloacetic acids (Appendix B, Table B-2) (Saghir and Schultz 2005). The inability to show reduced clearance for bromochloro- or dibromoacetic acid when administered as part of a mixture rather than individually may be explained by dose. The available studies that administered these two haloacetic acids as single compounds used high doses (i.e., ≥ 500 µmol/kg) where metabolic clearance was likely reduced by metabolic saturation and/or GST-ζ depletion. The primary effect of GST-ζ-depletion for both mixtures and single compounds was reduced clearance of the dihaloacetic acids (Figure 3-7a). In contrast, GST-ζ depletion did not affect clearance of trihaloacetic acids (Figure 3-7b). In addition, data for bromochloroacetic acid, a chiral molecule, show stereospecific metabolism with faster elimination of the (−) stereoisomer compared to the (+) stereoisomer (Figure 3-8). James et al. (1998) showed that the peak plasma concentrations and area under the concentration-time curve were 5- to 6-fold higher in old rats while the elimination half-life was almost 2-fold slower compared to young rats (Appendix B, Table B-2).

![Figure 3-7. Clearance of dihaloacetic acids (A) and trihaloacetic acids (B) administered as mixtures of di- and trihaloacetic acids at equimolar i.v. doses (25 µmol/kg) to male rats.](source)

Source: Saghir and Schultz 2005.

![Figure 3-8. Stereospecific clearance of an i.v. dose (520 µmol/kg) of (−), (+)bromochloroacetic acids administered to naïve and GST-ζ-depleted male rats.](source)

The clearance values reported for the di- and trihaloacetic acids indicate that there are marked differences in the degree of tubular secretion and reabsorption (Schultz et al. 1999). The adjusted renal clearance values for the trihaloacetic acids approached or exceeded the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) for rats, suggesting tubular secretion is an important factor for the renal clearance of trichloroacetic acids. In contrast, adjusted renal clearance values for the dihaloacetic acids are much lower than the GFR (i.e., similar to the urine flow rate) and indicate that tubular reabsorption is important. Thus, the data support the proposition that urinary excretion of trihaloacetic acids is controlled by tubular secretion while urinary excretion of dihaloacetic acids is controlled by tubular reabsorption in rats.

Toxicokinetic data in mice were limited to a few studies with dichloro- and trichloroacetic acid and one study each with dibromo-, bromochloro-, and bromodichloroacetic acid (Appendix B, Table B-3). Although mice have a higher capacity to metabolize dichloroacetic acid than rats and appear to be less susceptible to GST-ζ inhibition, the available data in mice are generally consistent with the rat data (i.e., relative rate of clearance of dichloro- > bromodichloro- > trichloroacetic acid) (Larson and Bull 1992, Gonzalez-Leon et al. 1999, Merdink et al. 2001). Elimination kinetics for bromodichloroacetic acid in mice differed from that in rats and is best illustrated by comparing renal clearance (Merdink et al. 2001). Renal clearance adjusted for protein binding in mice suggested a very efficient tubular reabsorption process. In contrast, tubular secretion was the dominant renal process in rats (Schultz et al. 1999, Merdink et al. 2001).

Pretreatment with trichloroacetic acid had no appreciable effect on the toxicokinetics of a challenge dose of either trichloroacetic acid or dichloroacetic acid in mice (Gonzalez-Leon et al. 1999, Schultz et al. 2002). In contrast, pretreatment with dichloroacetic acid caused a significant increase in the blood concentration-time profile and reduced the clearance of dichloroacetic acid (Gonzalez-Leon et al. 1999). However, the impact of dichloroacetic acid pretreatment on clearance in mice was not as great as that observed in rats. As in rats, age was also shown to be an important factor (Schultz et al. 2002). Clearance of dichloroacetic acid in aged control mice was about 25% of that measured in young control mice. However, compared to age-matched controls, clearance was reduced in young but not aged mice, with a maximum effect observed at 16 hours or less recovery time (see Appendix B, Table B-3).

### 3.5 Summary and synthesis

Haloacetic acids, especially dihaloacetic and trihaloacetic acids, have many similarities for absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion, although differences may exist due to different numbers of halogens on the alpha carbon or the presence of bromine atoms. The findings for absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion for haloacetic acids in general and for dihaloacetic and trihaloacetic acids as a class are summarized in Table 3-1 and similar information for seven individual haloacetic acids in Table 3-2. Absorption after oral ingestion is approximately 100% for trihaloacetic acids in rats, but lower absorption has been reported for bromodichloroacetic acid in mice and for dihaloacetic acids in general in both humans and rats. Once absorbed, haloacetic acids distribute rapidly and uniformly outside the vascular system and tissue:blood partition coefficients are near unity, although binding of trihaloacetic acids to plasma proteins can increase blood concentrations, particularly in humans compared with experimental animals. Blood concentrations decrease rapidly with a log-linear decline within 12
hours of i.v. injection. Metabolism of trihaloacetic acids involves both microsomal and cytosolic subcellular fractions although the primary pathway for trihaloacetic acids is through cytochrome P450-catalyzed reductive dehalogenation to generate a dihaloacetic acid via a free radical intermediate. Further metabolism of dihaloacetic acids to glyoxylate and other urinary metabolites (see Table 3-4) results from a glutathione-dependent process catalyzed by GST-ζ. Elimination for all haloacetic acids is mainly through the urine, although some metabolism to carbon dioxide with elimination from the lungs is possible. Dihaloacetic acids inhibit their own metabolism by inhibiting GST-ζ, thus slowing elimination, but GST-ζ in humans is more resistant to inactivation than in rats and mice. Haloacetic acids can be broadly described by three patterns of elimination: (1) high metabolism and high renal clearance (bromodichloro-, chlorodibromo-, and tribromoacetic acids), (2) high metabolism and low renal clearance (dihaloacetic acids), and (3) low metabolism with moderate renal clearance (trichloroacetic acid). In general, trichloroacetic acid is an outlier compared with other trihaloacetic acids, with greater binding to plasma proteins, lower volume of distribution, and lower metabolism.

Toxicokinetic studies in experimental animals show no significant differences in the apparent volume of distribution among dihaloacetic and trihaloacetic acids while area under the concentration-time curve and clearance show considerable differences. GST-ζ depletion did not significantly affect toxicokinetics of trihaloacetic acids, but did significantly reduce clearance and also increased area under the concentration-time curve for dihaloacetic acids. Dihaloacetic acids and trihaloacetic acids likely compete in metabolic processes because the primary effect on haloacetic acid toxicokinetics when administered as mixtures is reduced clearance.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HAA</th>
<th>Absorption</th>
<th>Distribution</th>
<th>Metabolism</th>
<th>Excretion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| All HAA’s                        | Rapidly absorbed from the GI tract following ingestion | Rapid and uniform distribution to all body tissues  
Tissue:blood partition ~1  
Apparent volume of distribution in rats not significantly different for 7 HAAs below | Rodents: Ultimate metabolites  
glyoxylic acid, glycolic acid, oxalic acids, glycine, unknown metabolites  
Substantial differences in extent of biotransformation among species but overall metabolism qualitatively similar in humans and animals | Substantial differences in extent of elimination among species |
| Trihaloacetic acids (Tri-HAAs)   | ND                                  | Overall: Rapid log-linear decline in blood concentrations to below LoD within 12 h (except TCA)  
Rats: Plasma protein binding 50% to 80%  
Blood:plasma ratio 0.66–0.82  
Maximum blood concentrations ~1.5–6 times greater for tri-HAAs than di-HAAs | Overall: P450 metabolism in microsomes to dihaloacetic acid via dihaloacetic radical  
In vitro: Rate of metabolism directly proportional with number of bromines  
Rodents: Moderate to high metabolism for brominated tri-HAAs | Rodents: High renal clearance for brominated tri-HAAs  
Rats: Urinary excretion of tri-HAAs is controlled by tubular secretion |
| Dihaloacetic acids (Di-HAAs)     | ND                                  | Overall: Rapid log-linear decline in blood concentrations to below LoD within 12 h  
Rats: Plasma protein binding 6%–11%  
Blood:plasma ratio ~1 | Overall: GST-ζ metabolism in cytosol to glyoxylic acid (BCA > DCA > DBA); reductive dehalogenation to monohaloacetic acids is a minor pathway  
Rodents: High metabolism  
DCA, BCA, DBA irreversibly inhibit GST-ζ | Rodents: Low renal clearance; low amounts of parent compounds in urine  
Rats: Urinary excretion of di-HAAs is controlled by tubular reabsorption |
Table 3-2. ADME information for individual haloacetic acids

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Individual HAAs</th>
<th>Absorption</th>
<th>Distribution</th>
<th>Metabolism</th>
<th>Excretion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trichloroacetic (TCA)</td>
<td><em>Rats: ~100%</em></td>
<td><em>Humans: Volume of distribution lower than in rodents, possibly due to greater plasma protein binding (75%–87%) in humans</em></td>
<td><em>Overall: Least metabolized HAA in humans and animals</em></td>
<td><em>Humans: Urinary clearance half-life 2.1–6.3 days; clearance slower than in rodents; 75%–93% excreted unchanged</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Rats: Blood levels still detectable after 24 h</em></td>
<td><em>Rats: Low metabolism</em></td>
<td><em>Rats: Moderate renal clearance</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Vd = 782 mL/kg</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Mice: Vd = 571 mL/kg</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromodichloroacetic (BDCA)</td>
<td><em>Rats: ~100%</em></td>
<td><em>Rats: Vd = 730 mL/kg</em></td>
<td><em>Rodents: Greater rate of metabolism in mice compared with rats</em></td>
<td><em>Rodents: Urinary excretion higher in rats than mice, likely due to more efficient renal tubular reabsorption in mice</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Mice: 28%–73%</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Mice: Vd = 518 mL/kg</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorodibromoacetic (CDBA)</td>
<td><em>Rats: ~100%</em></td>
<td><em>Rats: Vd = 636 mL/kg</em></td>
<td><em>ND</em></td>
<td><em>ND</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribromoacetic (TBA)</td>
<td><em>ND</em></td>
<td><em>Rats: Vd = 449 mL/kg</em></td>
<td><em>ND</em></td>
<td><em>ND</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dichloroacetic (DCA)</td>
<td><em>Humans: Variable from &lt; 10% to 100%</em></td>
<td><em>Rats: Complex concentration-time profile with multiple peaks</em></td>
<td><em>Humans: Human GST-ζ more resistant to inhibition</em></td>
<td><em>Humans: Large interindividual variations in clearance may be due to GST-ζ polymorphisms</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Rats: Vd = 618 mL/kg</em></td>
<td><em>Relative rates: Mice &gt; rats &gt; humans</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Mice: Vd = 548, 497 mL/kg</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribromoacetic (TBA)</td>
<td><em>Rats: 47%</em></td>
<td><em>Rats: Vd = 881 mL/kg</em></td>
<td><em>In vitro: Metabolism more rapid for (-)-BCA compared with (+)-BCA</em></td>
<td><em>ND</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromochloroacetic (BCA)</td>
<td><em>Rats: 30%</em></td>
<td><em>Rats: Vd = 400 mL/kg</em></td>
<td><em>ND</em></td>
<td><em>ND</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GST-ζ = glutathione S transferase zeta; LoD = limit of detection; ND = no data.
4 Studies of Cancer in Experimental Animals

Introduction

This section reviews and assesses the evidence from carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals exposed to any of the thirteen haloacetic acids examined in this monograph. Experimental animal carcinogenicity studies were identified using methods described in the protocol (NTP 2017). A total of 24 publications were identified that reported on exposure of experimental animals to a haloacetic acid and met the following inclusion criteria: (1) reported on the presence or absence of neoplastic and related preneoplastic lesions, (2) had a concurrent or historical control group, and (3) either had an observational duration of 12 months or greater for rats and mice or were co-carcinogen exposure studies (initiation-promotion and other co-carcinogen studies). Three papers were excluded because they duplicated the data in other peer-reviewed reports (Carter et al. 2003, Melnick et al. 2007, Kissling et al. 2009). Two additional papers were not peer reviewed and were not included; however, data from one report (Bull 1989) was also reported in a later, peer-reviewed publication, which was considered. The other report by Innes and Ulland (1968) was not considered useful enough to justify peer reviewing it for inclusion.

Section 4.1 provides an overview of the studies, Section 4.2 assesses the quality of the studies, Section 4.3 reports the findings of the studies, organized by the type of neoplasms observed, and Section 4.4 provides a synthesis of the results from all studies.

4.1 Overview of the studies

The 19 remaining publications reported a total of 40 studies; 32 were carcinogenicity studies, 3 were in transgenic animals (NTP 2007b), and 5 were initiation-promotion studies (Gwynn and Salaman 1953, Herren-Freund et al. 1987, Pereira et al. 1997). These studies exposed rodents to seven of the thirteen haloacetic acids considered in this monograph; six of which were tested in long-term carcinogenicity studies: monochloroacetic acid (NTP 1992, DeAngelo et al. 1997), dichloroacetic acid (Bull et al. 1990, DeAngelo et al. 1991, Daniel et al. 1992, Richmond et al. 1995, DeAngelo et al. 1996, DeAngelo et al. 1999, Wood et al. 2015), dibromoacetic acid (NTP 2007a), bromochloroacetic acid (NTP 2009), trichloroacetic acid (Herren-Freund et al. 1987, Bull et al. 1990, Pereira 1996, DeAngelo et al. 1997, Von Tungeln et al. 2002, DeAngelo et al. 2008), and bromodichloroacetic acid (NTP 2015). In addition, five initiation-promotion studies were identified for monoiiodoacetic acid (Gwynn and Salaman 1953), dichloroacetic acid (Herren-Freund et al. 1987, Pereira et al. 1997), and trichloroacetic acid. All haloacetic acids were tested at multiple doses up to at least 1,000 mg/L for all six tested in long-term studies and up to 5,000 mg/L for dichloroacetic acid and trichloroacetic acid.

An overview of these studies is provided below (Table 4-1), and tables describing the study conditions and tumor findings are included in Appendix C, Tables C-8 through C-13. Exposure in almost all of these studies was by an oral route, mostly in drinking water, although two studies were by gavage (NTP 1992), and one study used intraperitoneal exposure (Von Tungeln et al. 2002). Another study exposed a transgenic animal model, Tg.AC hemizygous mice, by dermal application (NTP 2007b).
### Table 4-1. Overview of cancer studies in experimental animals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species, strain, (sex)</th>
<th>Route</th>
<th>Exposure/study durations</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monochloroacetic acid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat F344/N (M&amp;F)</td>
<td>Gavage</td>
<td>104 wk/104 wk</td>
<td>NTP 1992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (M&amp;F)</td>
<td>Gavage</td>
<td>104 wk/104 wk</td>
<td>NTP 1992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, F344/M, (M)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>104 wk/104 wk</td>
<td>DeAngelo et al. 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monoiodoacetic acid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse albino “S” strain (NR)</td>
<td>Dermal</td>
<td>27 wk/30 wk</td>
<td>Gwynn and Salaman 1953&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dichloroacetic acid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat F344 (M)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>100 wk/100 wk &amp; 103 wk/103 wk</td>
<td>DeAngelo et al. 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat F344 (M)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>60 wk/60 wk (interim sacrifice) &amp; 104 wk/104 wk</td>
<td>Richmond et al. 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (M)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>60–75 wk/60–75 wk</td>
<td>DeAngelo et al. 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (M)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>90–100 wk/90–100 wk</td>
<td>DeAngelo et al. 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (M)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>61 wk/61 wk</td>
<td>Herren-Freund et al. 1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (M)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>61 wk/61 wk</td>
<td>Herren-Freund et al. 1987&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (M&amp;F)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>10 wk/94 wk</td>
<td>Wood et al. 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (F)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>360 d/376 d &amp; 360 d/360 d</td>
<td>Pereira 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (F)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>44 wk/52 wk</td>
<td>Pereira et al. 1997&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (M)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>52 wk/52 wk</td>
<td>Bull et al. 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (M)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>104 wk/104 wk</td>
<td>Daniel et al. 1992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse FVB Tg.AC (M&amp;F)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>26 wk/41 wk &amp; 26 wk/26 wk</td>
<td>NTP 2007&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse p53 haploinsufficent (M&amp;F)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>26 wk/41 wk &amp; 26 wk/26 wk</td>
<td>NTP 2007&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse FVB Tg.AC (M&amp;F)</td>
<td>Dermal</td>
<td>39 wk/39 wk &amp; 26 wk/26 wk</td>
<td>NTP 2007&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dibromoacetic acid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat F344/N (M&amp;F)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>106 wk/106 wk</td>
<td>NTP 2007&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (M&amp;F)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>106 wk/106 wk</td>
<td>NTP 2007&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bromochloroacetic acid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat F344/N (M&amp;F)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>105 wk/105 wk</td>
<td>NTP 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (M&amp;F)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>105 wk/105 wk</td>
<td>NTP 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trichloroacetic acid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat F344/N (M)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>104 wk/104 wk</td>
<td>DeAngelo et al. 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (M)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>60 wk/60 wk &amp; 104 wk/104 wk</td>
<td>DeAngelo et al. 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (M)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>61 wk/61 wk</td>
<td>Herren-Freund et al. 1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (M)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>61 wk/61 wk</td>
<td>Herren-Freund et al. 1987&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (F)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>576 d/376 d &amp; 360 d/360 d</td>
<td>Pereira 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (F)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>44 wk/50 wk</td>
<td>Pereira et al. 1997&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (M)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>52 wk/52 wk</td>
<td>Bull et al. 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (M&amp;F)</td>
<td>IP inj.</td>
<td>15 d/20 mo &amp; 15 d/12 mo</td>
<td>Von Tungeln et al. 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bromodichloroacetic acid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse B6C3F1 (M&amp;F)</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>105 wk/105 wk</td>
<td>NTP 2015</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup> Initiation-promotion study.<br>
<sup>b</sup> Transgenic animal model.
4.2 Study quality assessment

Each of these primary studies was systematically evaluated by two independent reviewers for its ability to inform the cancer hazard evaluation using a series of signaling questions related to the following study performance elements: study design, exposure conditions, outcome, confounding, reporting and analysis, and overall utility (see RoC Handbook). A summary of the studies’ quality assessments is provided below (Table 4-2), and details of each study assessment and quality criteria on a study-by-study basis are reported in Appendix C.

Most studies conducted by the NTP (1992, 2007a, 2007b, 2009, 2015) and some of the studies conducted by DeAngelo (DeAngelo et al. 1997, DeAngelo et al. 2008) were considered the most informative because they used a sufficient number of experimental animals for a near lifetime exposure duration, tested three dose levels (except for NTP [1992] which used two dose levels) along with an untreated control, and performed full necropsies with histopathology. None of the studies used step-sectioning technique to evaluate an organ. The rat NTP (1992) study had a moderate level of utility because the rats were very sensitive to monochloroacetic acid in the 13-week study and developed non-carcinogenic toxicity, which required the dose level to be reduced in the 2-year study. DeAngelo et al. (1997) and the NTP studies also included historical control data. Data on historical controls is useful for identifying rare tumors.


Only a few studies were considered to be of low quality (overall utility of +) because of not reporting chemical purity (Pereira et al. 1997), testing at only a single dose level (Gwynn and Salaman 1953), use of a small number of animals (Gwynn and Salaman 1953, Bull et al. 1990), or the lack of full necropsies and instead focusing on specific target organs (Gwynn and Salaman 1953, Bull et al. 1990, Pereira et al. 1997) (in one study only a sample of randomly picked gross liver lesions were examined histologically [Bull et al. 1990] and in one study, lesions were classified based on “macroscopic” examination [Gwynn and Salaman 1953]).
Table 4-2. Quality evaluations of cancer studies in experimental animals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Study design</th>
<th>Exposure conditions</th>
<th>Outcome</th>
<th>Confounding</th>
<th>Reporting and analysis</th>
<th>Overall utility</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Randomization</td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>Animal model</td>
<td>Statistical Power</td>
<td>Purity</td>
<td>Dosing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monochloroacetic acid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP 1992, Mouse M/F</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP 1992, Rat M/F</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeAngelo et al. 1997, Rat M</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monoiodoacetic acid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gwynn and Salaman 1953, Mouse NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dichloroacetic acid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeAngelo et al. 1996, Rat M (100 wk), 2 doses</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeAngelo et al. 1996, Rat M (103 wk), 1 dose</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Richmond et al. 1995, Rat M (104 wk)</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeAngelo et al. 1991, Mouse M (60/75 wk) 3 doses</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeAngelo et al. 1991, Mouse M (60 wk), 1 dose</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeAngelo et al. 1999, Mouse M, 4 doses</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herren-Freund et al. 1987, Mouse M</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herren-Freund et al. 1987, Mouse M</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood et al. 2015, Mouse M</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood et al. 2015, Mouse F</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pereira 1996, Mouse F (360 d)</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Study</td>
<td>Study design</td>
<td>Exposure conditions</td>
<td>Outcome</td>
<td>Confounding</td>
<td>Reporting and analysis</td>
<td>Overall utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Randomization</td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>Animal model</td>
<td>Statistical Power</td>
<td>Dosing</td>
<td>Exposure duration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pereira 1996, Mouse F (576 d)</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pereira et al. 1997, Mouse F</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bull et al. 1990, Mouse M</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel et al. 1992, Mouse M</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP 2007b, Mouse M/F FVB Tg.AC dermal (39 wk), 3 doses</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP 2007b, Mouse M/F FVB Tg.AC dermal (26 wk), 3 doses</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP 2007b, Mouse M FVB Tg.AC (41 wk), 3 doses</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP 2007b, Mouse F FVB Tg.AC (41 wk), 3 doses</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP 2007b, Mouse M FVB Tg.AC (26 wk), 3 doses</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP 2007b, Mouse F FVB Tg.AC (26 wk), 3 doses</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dibromoacetic acid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP 2007a Mouse M/F</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP 2007a Rat M/F</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromochloroacetic acid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP 2009 Rat M/F</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Study</td>
<td>Study design</td>
<td>Exposure conditions</td>
<td>Outcome</td>
<td>Confounding</td>
<td>Reporting and analysis</td>
<td>Overall utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Randomization</td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>Animal model*</td>
<td>Statistical Power*</td>
<td>Purity</td>
<td>Dosing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP 2009 Mouse M/F</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trichloroacetic acid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeAngelo et al. 1997 Rat M</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeAngelo et al. 2008 Mouse M (60 wk)</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeAngelo et al. 2008 Mouse M (104 wk), 1 dose</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeAngelo et al. 2008 Mouse M (104 wk), 2 doses</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herren-Freund et al. 1987 Mouse M</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herren-Freund et al. 1987* Mouse M</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pereira 1996 Mouse F (576 d)</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pereira 1996 Mouse F (360 d)</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pereira et al. 1997* Mouse F</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bull et al. 1990 Mouse M</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Von Tungeln et al. 2002 Mouse M/F (20 mo)</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Von Tungeln et al. 2002 Mouse M/F (12 mo)</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bromodichloroacetic acid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP 2015, Rat M/F</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP 2015, Mouse M/F</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*These factors contribute to the sensitivity of the study.
*Initiation/promotion study; *Transgenic animal model.
Other studies rated as low utility were not conventional carcinogenicity studies and instead were initiation-promotion studies that did not include groups that exposed animals to the haloacetic acid promoter without the initiator (Gwynn and Salaman 1953, Pereira et al. 1997) or they used p53 haploinsufficient or Tg.AC hemizygous transgenic mice. The p53 haploinsufficient transgenic mice may not be able to detect non-genotoxic carcinogens (Tennant and Spalding 1996, Gulezian et al. 2000, Spalding et al. 2000). Concerns for the Tg.AC hemizygous mice include production of false positive results from vehicle controls (Jacobs and Hatfield 2013), or minor skin abrasions (Fuhrman et al. 2005), and its inability to distinguish between promotion and de novo carcinogenicity (Jacobs and Hatfield 2013, Luijten et al. 2016). The use of the Tg.AC hemizygous mouse is no longer recommended by the FDA (Luijten et al. 2016). Another limitation of these studies was the small number of animals used for each treatment group, further limiting the ability to detect small changes in incidence.

4.3 Neoplastic findings from carcinogenesis studies

Results are summarized below for tumors induced by seven mono-, di-, and tri-haloacetic acids (monochloroacetic acid, monoiodoacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid, dibromoacetic acid, bromochloroacetic acid, trichloroacetic acid, and bromodichloroacetic acid). Section 4.3.1 discusses liver neoplasms, which are reported by themselves because they developed in mice in all positive studies. The other sections discuss other tumor sites (Section 4.3.2), studies with transgenic animals (Section 4.3.3), and initiation-promotion studies (Section 4.3.4). Table 4-3 in Section 4.4 summarizes results by individual haloacetic acid. The following text summarizes neoplastic findings across tumor sites and across haloacetic acids rather than providing a detailed study-by-study description. Information on the individual cancer studies can be found in tabular form in Appendix C.

4.3.1 Liver (see Table C-8 in Appendix C)

Overall, the data from studies that exposed rodents to haloacetic acids provide strong evidence that di- and trihaloacetic acids cause liver neoplasms in rodents. Liver neoplasms were significantly induced by all dihaloacetic acids (dichloroacetic acid, dibromoacetic acid, bromochloroacetic acid) and trihaloacetic acids, (trichloroacetic acid, bromodichloroacetic acid) tested by exposure to male and female mice in the drinking water in well-conducted studies for at least 12 months. Significant increases in liver neoplasms for male rats were reported for dichloroacetic acid only.

The routes of exposure were primarily through drinking water with one study using intraperitoneal injection. Either route would be expected to result in initial exposure of the liver by uptake from the gastrointestinal tract circulation via the hepatic portal system. Exposure of the liver to the relatively high concentration of haloacetic acid prior to metabolism and distribution to other tissues could be a factor in the common occurrence of liver neoplasms.

All chronic cancer studies in this section are of moderate study quality except for Bull et al. (1990) which has lower study quality rating (see Appendix C). Some studies focused on the liver pathology only and did not do a full necropsy on the whole animal; limitations on study quality would not apply to histopathology results for this tissue.
Details on liver findings for the individual HAAs are discussed first, followed by a discussion of the findings across studies.

**Chlorine-only haloacetic acids**

No liver tumors were induced by the only monohaloacetic acid tested, monochloroacetic acid, which was administered by gavage to rats and mice (NTP 1992) and in drinking water to rats (DeAngelo et al. 1997).

Dichloroacetic acid was tested for carcinogenicity in more studies than any other haloacetic acid, with 11 publications reporting 13 drinking water studies that varied by species (rat or mouse), sex, dose levels tested (from 50 mg/L up to 5,000 mg/L), and duration of exposure and observation (from 10 weeks to 104 weeks for chronic studies). These studies did not generally provide explanations for the choices of duration, or dose used. In general, most of the studies were in male mice only, a stop-exposure study was reported for male and female mice, two studies were in female mice only, and two studies were in male rats only (see Table 4-1). Overall, increased incidences of liver tumors were reported for both sexes in mice and male rats over a range of doses and duration of exposure indicating a robust tumorigenic response for dichloroacetic acid.

In male mice, dichloroacetic acid induced a significant increase in hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma at 5,000 mg/L for 60 weeks in a multiple-dose study for 60 to 75 weeks (50, 500, 5,000 mg/L) (DeAngelo et al. 1991) and at lower doses (starting at 1,000 mg/L) in a multi-dose, two-year study (0, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 3,500 mg/L, see Figure 4-1A) (DeAngelo et al. 1999). Three single high-dose studies of dichloroacetic acid in male mice yielded significant incidence rates for hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma at 500 mg/L in a two-year study (Daniel et al. 1992) and 3,500 mg/L (DeAngelo et al. 1991) or 5,000 mg/L (Herren-Freund et al. 1987) in 60-week studies. Bull et al. (1990) reported that 50% (5 of 10) of male mice treated with 2,000 mg/L of dichloroacetic acid in the drinking water for one year developed hepatocellular carcinoma; however, only mice with gross liver lesions were histologically examined, including only two out of the 35 control mice in this study, which also had other study limitations (see Appendix C). In female mice, dichloroacetic acid caused significant increases in the incidence of hepatocellular adenoma at the mid (860 mg/L) and high dose (2,600 mg/L) and carcinoma at the high dose (2,600 mg/L) in an ~1.5 year study (Pereira 1996) (see Figure 4-1D); only hepatocellular adenoma was significantly increased at the high dose in a one-year study reported in the same publication.

In a stop-exposure study by Wood et al. (2015), 4-week-old mice were exposed to dichloroacetic acid in the drinking water for 10 weeks and then maintained on deionized water until 98 weeks of age for a total observation period of 94 weeks. In male mice, significant increases in the incidence of hepatocellular adenoma, carcinoma, and adenoma or carcinoma or hepatoblastoma (combined) were induced at the high dose (3,500 mg/L) with a significant positive trend for all three analyses. Female mice had significantly increased incidences of hepatocellular adenoma or carcinoma or hepatoblastoma combined at 1,000 mg/L and 2,000 mg/L with a significant positive trend. Wood et al. noted that the tumor incidence and number induced by the high dose level in their study were ≥ 85% of the same findings seen after continuous lifetime exposure, indicating that early life exposure may be as carcinogenic as lifetime exposure.
Dichloroacetic acid significantly increased the incidence of hepatocellular neoplasms in male rats as reported in two studies described in the same publication (DeAngelo et al. 1996) that differed slightly in duration; in the study with a duration of 103 weeks, both the incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma and the combined incidence of hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma were significantly increased at a dose of 2,500 mg/L, and in the second study with a duration of 100 weeks, the combined incidence of hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma was significantly increased at a dose of 500 mg/L. A non-significant increase in hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma was observed in male rats exposed to 500 mg/L (adenoma: 21% vs. 4% controls; carcinoma: 10% vs. 0% controls) in a 104-week study and to 2,400 mg/L (adenoma: 26% vs. 0% controls; carcinoma: 4% vs. 0% controls) at 60 weeks (Richmond et al. 1995), which provides some support for the findings in the DeAngelo study.

Trichloroacetic acid was also tested in multiple studies (11 studies reported in 7 publications) in male and female mice but with only one study reporting results for male rats. In male mice, significantly increased incidences of hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma were induced in two drinking water studies, one tested a single dose of 4,500 mg/L for 2 years and a multi-dose study, which reported significantly increased incidences after 1 year at 5,000 mg/L and after 2 years at 500 mg/L by DeAngelo and coworkers (DeAngelo et al. 2008) and in a single-dose study by Herren-Freund et al. (Herren-Freund et al. 1987) using a dose of 5,000 mg/L for 61 weeks. Significantly increased incidences of hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma in male mice was observed at a much lower dose (500 mg/L) in the only study (multi-dose 50, 500 mg/L) that tested for carcinogenicity at doses less than 4,500 mg/L (DeAngelo et al. 2008) (see Figure 4-1A). Bull et al. (1990) reported that a few hepatocellular carcinomas were observed in male mice in the mid-dose (1,000 mg/L, 2 of 5 animals) and high-dose trichloroacetic acid groups (2,000 mg/L, 4 of 11 animals); however, there were only two control mice in this study, which had many study limitations (see Appendix C, Table C-30). In female mice, trichloroacetic acid caused significant increases in the incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma at the mid (1,100 mg/L) and high dose (3,300 mg/L) and adenoma at the high dose (3,300 mg/L) in an ~1.5 year study (Pereira 1996); the incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma was significantly increased at the high dose in a one-year study reported in the same publication. Trichloroacetic acid did not significantly increase the incidence of hepatocellular neoplasms in a 2-year, multi-dose (0, 50, 500, 5,000 mg/L) study in male rats (DeAngelo et al. 1997).

Intraperitoneal injection (2,000 mg/L over two injections in neonatal male and female mice) of trichloroacetic acid did not induce liver tumors in male or female mice at either the 12-month or 20-month observation period (Von Tungeln et al. 2002).

**Bromine-containing haloacetic acids: Dibromoacetic acid, bromochloroacetic acid, bromodichloroacetic acid**

Exposure to dibromoacetic acid, bromochloroacetic acid, and bromodichloroacetic acid were tested by NTP in male and female mice and male and female rats exposed in the drinking water (NTP 2007a, 2009, 2015). Dibromoacetic acid was given at 50, 500, and 1,000 mg/L and the bromochloro- and bromodichloroacetic acids were given at 250, 500 and 1,000 mg/L. Overall, the studies provide convincing evidence that these chemicals cause malignant tumors in mice: hepatocellular carcinoma in male and female mice and hepatoblastoma in male mice, which were outside the historical control ranges, with positive dose-response trends. Additionally, female
mice exposed to bromodichloroacetic acid had a significant increase in hemangiosarcoma in the liver at 1,000 mg/L. A summary of the findings for the different types of hepatocellular neoplasms and combinations is provided in Table 4-3 and the incidences of hepatocellular carcinoma and hepatoblastoma are provided in Figures 4-1 and 4-2. None of the bromine-containing dihaloacetic acids caused a significant increase in the incidence of hepatocellular neoplasms in rats.

Table 4-3. Hepatocellular neoplasms in mice exposed to bromine-containing haloacetic acids

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HAA (Sex)</th>
<th>Hepatocellular Adenoma</th>
<th>Hepatocellular Carcinoma</th>
<th>Hepatocellular Adenoma or carcinoma (combined)</th>
<th>Hepatoblastoma</th>
<th>All liver neoplasms combined</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>DBA (males)</strong></td>
<td>Sig. increases at all doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at high dose; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at all doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at the mid and high dose; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at all doses; positive trend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DBA (females)</strong></td>
<td>Sig. increases at mid and high doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at mid and high doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at mid and high doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at all doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at mid and high doses; positive trend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BCA (males)</strong></td>
<td>Sig. increases at low and mid doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at mid and high doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at all doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at mid and high doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at mid and high doses; positive trend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BCA (females)</strong></td>
<td>Sig. increases at all doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increase at mid dose; exceeds historical controls at all doses</td>
<td>Sig. increases at all doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at mid and high doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at all doses; positive trend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BDCA (males)</strong></td>
<td>Sig. increase at all doses; positive trend</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sig. increases at all doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at low and high dose; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at low and high dose; positive trend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BDCA (females)</strong></td>
<td>Sig. increase at all doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at mid and high doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increases at all doses; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increase at high dose; positive trend</td>
<td>Sig. increase at high dose; positive trend</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BCA = bromochloroacetic acid; BDCA = bromodichloroacetic acid; DBA = dibromoacetic acid; sig. = statistically significant.
Figure 4-1. Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) in female and male mice exposed to di- and trihaloacetic acids (HAAs)

Results are shown for bromine-containing HAAs in male mice (Panel A), chlorine-containing HAAs in male mice (Panel B), bromine-containing HAAs in female mice (Panel C), and chlorine-containing HAAs in female mice (Panel D).

Sources: NTP 2007a, NTP 2009, NTP 2015, for bromine-containing HAA in male (A) and female (C) mice; DeAngelo et al. 1999 for DCA in male mice (B) and DeAngelo et al. 2008 for TCA in male mice (B) and Pereira 1996 for DCA and TCA in female mice (D).

*P < 0.05; **P < 0.01; ***P < 0.001. Compared with corresponding control group.

BCA = bromochloroacetic acid, male mice trend P < 0.001; BDCA = bromodichloroacetic acid, male mice trend P < 0.001,
female mice trend $P < 0.001$; DBA = dibromoacetic acid, male mice trend $P < 0.001$, female mice trend $P = 0.019$; DCA = dichloroacetic acid, male mice trend $P < 0.001$, female mice trend $P < 0.001$; TCA = trichloroacetic acid, male mice trend $P < 0.01$, female mice trend $P < 0.001$.

The NTP and DeAngelo studies were 2 years in duration and the Pereira studies were 1.5 years in length. Trend refers to a positive trend and not the shape of the dose-response curve. Trends were not reported by the authors for DCA and TCA, but the NTP calculated trends based on the Cochran-Armitage test. In the NTP studies, BCA and BDCA were not tested at 50 mg/L and DBA was not tested at 250 mg/L. For the chlorine-only HAAs in males (C), the doses for DCA were 500, 1,000, 2,000, and 3,500 and for TCA they were 50 and 500 mg/L. In females (D), DCA was tested at 260, 860, and 2,600 mg/L and TCA was tested at 330, 1,100, and 3,300 mg/L (equimolar doses for DCA and TCA).

Figure 4-2. Hepatoblastoma in male mice exposed to di and trihaloacetic acids (HAAs)


* $P < 0.05$; ** $P < 0.01$; *** $P < 0.001$. Compared with corresponding control group.

BCA = bromochloroacetic acid; BDCA = bromodichloroacetic acid, trend $P < 0.001$; DBA = dibromoacetic acid, trend $P < 0.001$; DCA = dichloroacetic acid, trend $P < 0.001$.

Trend refers to a positive trend and not the shape of the dose-response curve. BCA and BDCA were not tested at 50 mg/L and DBA was not tested at 250 mg/L. DCA was tested at 1,000, 2,000, and 3,500 mg/L, but no hepatoblastomas were reported for the 2,000 or 3,500 mg/L doses.

Comparison of liver neoplasms findings across HAAs

Figures 4-1 and 4-2 compare the incidences of different types of hepatocellular neoplasms (carcinoma or hepatoblastoma) in male and female mice. (Data from studies with similar designs and/or similar laboratories were chosen for the graphs.) Incidences of combined liver neoplasms were not plotted because of the high background incidence of total liver neoplasms in controls. In general, no clear differences in the strength of the association with liver cancer by type or
number of halogens was observed; however, the data are difficult to interpret because of
differences in background carcinoma rates (especially between the chlorine-only haloacetic acids
and bromine-containing haloacetic acids) and the high incidences of liver neoplasms in treated
animals. There is some evidence to suggest that dichloroacetic acid but not the bromine-
containing haloacetic acids cause liver neoplasms in rats. In contrast, the bromine-containing
haloacetic acids may be linked to hepatoblastoma. Hepatoblastoma is an aggressive malignancy
originating from embryonic liver cells and is a pediatric liver cancer in humans. Incidences of
hepatoblastoma were significantly increased in male mice by the three bromine-containing
haloacetic acids tested by NTP and in female mice by bromodichloroacetic acid. The only study
to observe hepatoblastoma in mice exposed to a chlorine-only haloacetic acid was the stop-
exposure study (Wood et al. 2015) which found a single hepatoblastoma at the lowest dose in
males and none in females. However, the NTP studies also had the most complete necropsies and
pathological evaluations of all of the studies reviewed, which might have contributed to
identification of these tumors in mice exposed to bromine-containing haloacetic acids.

4.3.2 Other tumors (see Tables C-9 and C-10 in Appendix C)

The occurrence of tumors at multiple organ sites reinforces the evidence that some halogenated
acetic acids have systemic carcinogenic activity in addition to the liver. In addition to liver
tumors that developed with chronic exposure to the three brominated haloacetic acids tested by
NTP in well-conducted studies, dibromoacetic acid (NTP 2007a), bromochloroacetic acid (NTP
2009), and bromodichloroacetic acid (NTP 2015) increased the incidences of neoplasms at organ
sites outside the liver in both rats and mice. No increases in the incidence of neoplasms were
observed after exposure to chlorine-only haloacetic acids; however, these tumors were reported
only in studies conducted by NTP, which included full necropsies. Since most of the non-NTP
studies examined only the liver histologically, the presence of tumors at other sites cannot be
definitively ruled out (see Section 4.2, Table 4-2, and Appendix C).

Malignant mesothelioma of the peritoneal cavity lining was the only site to be induced by all
three bromine-containing haloacetic acids and thus the findings are discussed across haloacetic
acids. The findings for the other neoplasms are organized by the specific haloacetic acid. In the
NTP studies, dibromoacetic acid was tested at 0, 50 (low), 500 (mid), and 1,000 (high) mg/L and
bromochloroacetic acid and bromodichloroacetic were tested at 0, 250 (low), 500 (mid) and
1,000 (high) mg/L. The study on bromodichloroacetic acid differs from the other two haloacetic
acids tested by NTP in that it was conducted in F344/NTac rats whereas the other two haloacetic
acids were tested in B6C3F1 mice. Details on the study designs and findings are provided in Appendix C, Tables C-4a to C-4d, C-5a to C-5d, C-7a to C-7d).

**Malignant mesothelioma**

Dibromoacetic acid (NTP 2007a), bromochloroacetic acid (NTP 2009), or bromodichloroacetic
acid (NTP 2015) (Figure 4-3) increased the incidence of malignant mesothelioma in male rats
with drinking water exposure. Both dibromoacetic acid and bromodichloroacetic acid caused
significant positive dose-response trends. Tumors caused by exposure to bromochloroacetic acid
or dibromoacetic acid were found throughout the peritoneum, including the abdominal wall and
serosal organ surfaces; tumors caused by exposure to bromodichloroacetic acid were localized to
the *tunica vaginalis* of the testes. The historical control range for these tumors was exceeded for
dibromoacetic acid and bromochloroacetic acid (NTP 2009) at all doses and for dibromoacetic acid and bromodichloroacetic acid at the high dose. The strongest response was found for bromodichloroacetic acid, which significantly increased malignant mesothelioma at all doses, reaching 78% (poly-3 adjusted rate) for male rats exposed to the high dose.

![Graph showing malignant mesothelioma incidence in male rats exposed to bromochloroacetic acid (BCA), dibromoacetic acid (DBA), or bromodichloroacetic acid (BDCA) in drinking water.](image)

**Figure 4-3.** Malignant mesothelioma incidence in male rats exposed to bromochloroacetic acid (BCA), dibromoacetic acid (DBA), or bromodichloroacetic acid (BDCA) in drinking water

Note: DBA was tested at 0, 50, 500 1,000 mg/L.
*P < 0.05; **P < 0.01; ***P < 0.001, compared with corresponding control group.
Trend refers to a positive trend and not the shape of the dose-response curve. BCA = bromochloroacetic acid, trend not significant; BDCA = bromodichloroacetic acid, trend P < 0.001; DBA = dibromoacetic acid, trend P < 0.001.

**Dibromoacetic acid**

Mononuclear-cell leukemia incidence was significantly increased by exposure to dibromoacetic acid (NTP 2007a) at the high dose in female rats with a positive dose-response trend. Historical control rates can help interpret these findings because the background rates of mononuclear-cell leukemia in F344/N rats are high and variable. The poly-3 adjusted rates for the mid (35%) and high dose (47%) exceeded the historical control ranges in drinking water studies (20% to 30%) and thus increase the confidence that this is an exposure-related response. A significant increase in the incidence of mononuclear-cell leukemia was observed in male rats at the low but not the mid and high dose and no dose-response was observed; the incidence of tumors for the high dose was somewhat lower than the incidence in controls which exceeded the historical control range. The poly-3 adjusted rates for the controls (37%), low (66%), and mid (56%) but not the high dose exceeded the historical control range of 26% to 34% for drinking water studies. Overall, the
incidence of mononuclear-cell leukemia in male rats may be related to exposure to dibromoacetic acid but the findings are inconclusive.

Lung adenoma and adenoma or carcinoma (combined) were also significantly increased by exposure to dibromoacetic acid (NTP 2007a) at the mid-dose in male mice, and a significant dose response was observed for adenoma. The poly-3 adjusted incidence for lung adenoma or carcinoma in the mid (49%) and high dose (37%) and for adenoma at the mid (38%) and high dose (27%) exceeded the historical control range (12% to 26%) for drinking water studies. For female mice, tumor incidence for lung adenoma or carcinoma at the high dose (15%) exceeded the historical control range of 2% to 12%. A significant dose response for adenoma was observed but none of the pairwise dose comparisons were statistically significant. Overall, the data provided indicate that the lung is a target organ site for dibromoacetic acid with the strongest evidence from male mice.

**Bromochloroacetic acid**

In addition to causing malignant mesothelioma in male rats, bromochloroacetic acid also increased the neoplasms of the mammary gland in female rats and large intestine in female and male rats.

Bromochloroacetic acid (NTP 2009) administered in the drinking water significantly increased the incidence of multiple mammary gland fibroadenomas in the mid- and high-dose groups in female rat. This haloacetic acid also caused dose-related increases in the incidence of large intestinal adenoma in both male and female rats. Significant increases in incidence (15.5%) were observed at the highest dose in female rats compared to controls. These are rare tumors with a historical control incidence in drinking water studies of 0% and can progress to malignant tumors of the large intestine.

A statistically significant increase in pancreatic islet adenoma in male rats exposed to bromochloroacetic acid was observed in the mid-dose groups compared to controls, which exceeded the historical control rates for both drinking water studies (6% to 10%) and studies by all routes (0% to 12%) for the poly-3 adjusted incidence for the 500 mg/L dose (9/50, 22%) (NTP 2009). However, the incidence was similar in the high-dose group (7%) to the concurrent controls (7%) and there were no significant increases in other types of pancreatic islet lesions (e.g., hyperplasia, carcinoma).

**Bromodichloroacetic acid**

Compared to controls, exposure to bromodichloroacetic acid (NTP 2015) significantly increased the incidence of mammary gland fibroadenoma (in all exposed groups), carcinoma (high dose), adenoma or carcinoma combined (mid and high dose), and all types of neoplasms combined (in all exposed groups) in female rats. Significant dose-response trends were observed for mammary gland carcinoma, fibroadenoma, and adenoma, carcinoma, or fibroadenoma combined.

Bromodichloroacetic acid treatment resulted in an increase of 8% (4/50) over control values (0/50) of large intestinal (cecum, colon, and rectum combined) adenoma in male rats with 2/50 each in the mid- and high-dose groups. No historical control data were available for the F344/NTac strain; however, large intestine tumors are very rare tumors in F344/N rats with a very low incidence of 0/699 for 2013 historical control incidence and 0% to 2% for the 2009
historical control range) (NTP 2015). Overall, the evidence was considered equivocal because of the small numbers of neoplasms in the exposed animals.

Skin tumors, keratoacanthoma, subcutaneous fibromas, and combined incidences of epithelial tumors (i.e., squamous-cell papilloma, keratoacanthoma, sebaceous gland adenoma, basal-cell adenoma, basal-cell carcinoma, or squamous-cell carcinoma [combined]) were significantly increased in male rats exposed to the highest dose of bromodichloroacetic acid (NTP 2015). Positive trends were observed for fibroma, keratoacanthoma, and basal-cell adenoma.

Harderian gland adenoma and adenoma or carcinoma (combined) incidences were significantly increased in the high- and mid-exposure groups in male mice exposed to bromodichloroacetic acid (NTP 2015). Significant positive dose-response trends were observed for adenoma and carcinoma as well as adenoma or carcinoma (combined). The poly-3-adjusted incidences of the combined neoplasms at all dose levels (low dose = 26%, mid dose = 38%, high dose = 51%) exceeded the historical control range of 12% to 14% for drinking water controls and 6% to 24% for all routes.

Increases in the incidence of brain and oral cavity neoplasms were observed after administration of bromodichloroacetic acid in the drinking water. For each tumor type, the increase in the incidence of the neoplasm was small and non-significant but exceeded the historical control range. However, the low number of Fischer 344/NTac historical controls limited further interpretation of these findings. Overall, the evidence is unclear whether these effects are related to treatment.

**Synthesis across HAAs**

Overall, bromodichloroacetic acid appears to have the strongest association with neoplasms in experimental animals because it induced the largest number of different types of neoplasms (liver, malignant mesothelioma, mammary gland, skin, and Harderian gland, large intestine, and possibly neoplasms of the brain and oral cavity). In addition, it appears to have the strongest association with mesothelioma, which was the only neoplasm induced by all three bromine-containing haloacetic acids. Bromochloroacetic acid induced similar types of neoplasms as bromodichloroacetic acid – mesothelioma and mammary gland tumors – whereas the bromine-only haloacetic acid caused different types of tumors – mesothelioma, lung, and mononuclear-cell leukemia.

**4.3.3 Transgenic studies**

Two strains of male and female transgenic animals (Tg.AC hemizygous and p53 haploinsufficient mice) were exposed to dichloroacetic acid in drinking water and Tg.AC hemizygous transgenic mice were used to test dichloroacetic acid by dermal exposure. The intent of these studies was to determine whether these animal models could serve as an adjunct to the 2-year rodent cancer assays for water disinfection by-products, given that dichloroacetic acid is positive in rodent cancer studies. The limitations of these transgenic models were discussed in Section 4.1. The expected neoplasms with exposure to carcinogens that affect the p53 gene are lymphoma or sarcoma in p53 haploinsufficient mice and squamous-cell papilloma or carcinoma of the skin or forestomach in Tg.AC hemizygous mice (Tennant et al. 2001, Eastmond et al. 2013).
One publication reported testing dichloroacetic acid administered in the drinking water in males and females of both strains of transgenic animals with two different study durations (NTP 2007b). After 41 weeks of exposure, dichloroacetic acid induced significant incidences of female Tg.AC hemizygous mice with multiple squamous-cell papilloma of the forestomach and lung alveolar/bronchiolar adenoma in males. No neoplasms or preneoplasms were significantly increased in p53 haploinsufficient mice.

Two dermal exposure studies of dichloroacetic acid were conducted in male and female Tg.AC hemizygous mice (NTP 2007b). Dermal exposure to dichloroacetic acid induced increased incidences of squamous-cell papilloma and epidermal hyperplasia of the skin at the site of application in both sexes. Although these increases were significant, this model is susceptible to false-positive findings of squamous-cell papilloma of the skin. It is not possible to distinguish dichloroacetic acid carcinogenic effects in this model system from a non-carcinogenic effect that leads to skin irritation and false-positive results.

Though these model systems are not ideal and can’t be used directly to interpret the carcinogenic potential in experimental animals, the presence of neoplasms at the site of application offers evidence not only of increased incidences but also of a specific location where the exposure occurred and further supports the relationship of the results to treatment with dichloroacetic acid.

4.3.4 Initiation-promotion studies

Five initiation-promotion studies were identified that tested dichloroacetic acid, trichloroacetic acid, and monooiodoacetic acid. Dichloroacetic acid or trichloroacetic acid were administered in drinking water as a promoter in two sets of studies. In one set of studies, female mice were initiated by an intraperitoneal injection of N-methyl-N-nitrosourea (MNU) (Pereira et al. 1997). Dichloroacetic acid and trichloroacetic acid both significantly increased the multiplicity of hepatocellular adenomas and dichloroacetic acid significantly increased the multiplicity of foci of altered hepatocytes. In the second set of studies, male mice were injected intraperitoneally with ethynitrosourea (ENU) (Herren-Freund et al. 1987). Dichloroacetic acid and trichloroacetic acid both significantly increased the incidence of hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma at 2,000 and 5,000 mg/L above that caused by ENU alone. Further, 5,000 mg/L of either haloacetic acid alone, without ENU, significantly increased hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma.

Monoiodoacetic acid was administered by dermal application as a promoter to mice (sex not reported) that were initiated by dermal application of 7,12 dimethylbenz[a]anthracene (DMBA) (Gwynn and Salaman 1953). Monoiodoacetic acid significantly increased skin papillomas (exact histological classification not reported) in the high-dose group when compared to either acetone or acetic acid controls.

Only the Herren-Freund et al. (1987) initiation-promotion study included groups without the initiator being administered. The remaining initiation-promotion studies only examined the added effect of haloacetic acids to an already established carcinogenic process and so are not directly interpretable as to animal carcinogenicity (Pereira et al. 1997, Gwynn and Salaman 1953).
4.4 Synthesis

The evidence for the carcinogenic potential of haloacetic acids in experimental animals is strong as numerous studies have shown significant increases in the incidences of neoplasia from exposure to several haloacetic acids. All haloacetic acids, except for the monochloroacetic acid, induced significantly increased incidences of liver neoplasms in mice or rats, which is consistent with a possible common carcinogenic mode of action (see Table 4-4).

Dichloroacetic acid and trichloroacetic acid induced hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma in both sexes of B6C3F1 mice, and in male Fischer 344 rats exposed to dichloroacetic acid.

Dibromoacetic acid induced hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma in male and female mice, hepatoblastoma and lung tumors in male mice. In female rats, it induced mononuclear-cell leukemia and in male rats, malignant mesothelioma.

Bromochloroacetic acid caused tumors at several tissue sites in both rats and mice. It induced treatment-related malignant mesothelioma and adenoma of the large intestine in male rats, multiple fibroadenomas of the mammary gland in female rats, hepatoblastoma in male mice and hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma in male and female mice.

Bromodichloroacetic acid had the most treatment-related cancer sites in both rats and mice. Male mice had treatment-related incidences of adenoma, adenoma or carcinoma (combined) of the Harderian gland, hepatoblastoma, and hepatocellular carcinoma. Female mice had increased incidences of hepatoblastoma, and hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma. Male Fischer 344/NTac rats had increased incidences of malignant mesothelioma, epithelial tumors of the skin (combined) and subcutaneous fibroma, which typically does not progress to a malignancy. Female rats had treatment-related increases in incidences of fibroadenoma (includes multiple) and carcinoma of the mammary gland.

The mechanisms by which haloacetic acids might induce cancer are discussed in Section 6 and overall conclusions for the carcinogenicity of haloacetic acids are reported in Section 8.
### Table 4-4. Results from cancer studies in experimental animals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical (route)</th>
<th>Neoplasms in mice (sex)</th>
<th>Neoplasms in rats (sex)</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monochloroacetic acid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gavage</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Not tested</td>
<td>NTP 1992&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dichloroacetic acid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>NF</td>
<td>Liver – hepatocellular carcinoma (M) Liver – hepatocellular adenoma or carcinoma (M)</td>
<td>DeAngelo &lt;i&gt;et al.&lt;/i&gt; 1996&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>Liver – hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma (M/F)</td>
<td>NF</td>
<td>DeAngelo &lt;i&gt;et al.&lt;/i&gt; 1991, DeAngelo &lt;i&gt;et al.&lt;/i&gt; 1999&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;, Herren-Freund &lt;i&gt;et al.&lt;/i&gt; 1987, Daniel &lt;i&gt;et al.&lt;/i&gt; 1992&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;, Wood &lt;i&gt;et al.&lt;/i&gt; 2015, Pereira 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dibromoacetic acid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>Liver – hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma (M/F) Liver – hepatoblastoma (M) Lung – alveolar/bronchiolar adenoma (M) Lung – alveolar/bronchiolar adenoma or carcinoma (M)</td>
<td>Malignant mesothelioma (M) Mononuclear-cell leukemia (F)</td>
<td>NTP 2007a&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bromochloroacetic acid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>Liver – hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma (M/F) Liver – hepatoblastoma (M)</td>
<td>Malignant mesothelioma (M) Mammary gland – fibroadenoma (multiple only) (F)</td>
<td>NTP 2009&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trichloroacetic acid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>Liver – hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma (M/F)</td>
<td>NF</td>
<td>DeAngelo &lt;i&gt;et al.&lt;/i&gt; 2008&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;, Herren-Freund &lt;i&gt;et al.&lt;/i&gt; 1987, Pereira 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bromodichloroacetic acid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemical (route)</td>
<td>Neoplasms in mice (sex)</td>
<td>Neoplasms in rats (sex)</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>Liver – hepatocellular adenoma (F)</td>
<td>Malignant mesothelioma (M)</td>
<td>NTP 2015&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Liver – hepatocellular carcinoma (M/F)</td>
<td>Mammary gland – fibroadenoma and carcinoma (F)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Liver – hepatoblastoma (M/F)</td>
<td>Skin – fibroma (M)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Harderian gland – adenoma (M)</td>
<td>Skin – keratoacanthoma (M)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Harderian gland – adenoma or carcinoma (combined) (M)</td>
<td>Skin – squamous-cell papilloma, keratoacanthoma, sebaceous gland adenoma, basal-cell adenoma, basal-cell carcinoma, or squamous-cell carcinoma (combined) (M)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>The percent tumor incidences for all neoplasms listed were significantly increased over control values except for adenoma of the large intestine in rats (M/F) which was considered treatment-related due to the rarity of these tumors and progression to malignancy.

<sup>b</sup>Full necropsy was performed.

F = female; M = male; NF = none found.
5 Human Cancer Studies

Water disinfection by-products include a complex mixture of chemicals created from reactions between water disinfection agents (such as chlorine) and organic matter in the water. These include a wide variety of compounds that lack reliable exposure measurement methods. Often, trihalomethanes as a class or a specific trihalomethane are used as a proxy measure for the complex mixture of chemicals in disinfected water (see Section 2.3.2 and Figure 2-5). To date, only one human epidemiological study has been identified that evaluated haloacetic acid exposures (i.e., any of the 13 individual chemicals or as a class or subclass) in humans and cancer risk. However, in addition to this cohort study, existing data in the primary literature of exposures to water disinfection mixtures or specific classes of water disinfection by-products (such as trihalomethanes) may serve as surrogates for chlorinated water. Findings from the cohort study are discussed below, along with a brief discussion of human cancer findings and any potential association with disinfection by-products. The discussion summarizes the review in the general remarks section of the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) monograph on Some Chemicals Present in Industrial and Consumer Products, Food and Drinking-Water (IARC 2013c) and updates the literature since that monograph.

5.1 Cohort Study

Jones et al. (2017) investigated the risk of kidney cancers from ingested nitrate and other disinfection by-products in the Iowa Women’s Health Study (IWHS), a cohort of 41,836 postmenopausal women followed for up to 24 years, from 1986 to 2010. This study categorized women’s drinking water exposure by source: public water, private well, and other sources. Exposure then to water disinfection products was split into time at that source (≤ 10 years or > 10 years), and the cancer analysis was done on women exposed to public water sources for greater than 10 years (N = 15,577). Exposure to haloacetic acids, including a mixture of five regulated haloacetic acids (monochloroacetic acid, monobromoacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid, dibromoacetic acid, trichloroacetic acid) and individual haloacetic acids (dichloroacetic acid, trichloroacetic acid and bromochloroacetic acid, which is unregulated) and trihalomethanes (total as well as individual) were estimated via an expert assessment that used available measures (data from plants, water source, quality, treatment, and disinfection type). A total of 266 incident kidney cancers were observed among all women in the study, with 125 occurring among women with greater than 10 years exposure to a public water source. No associations were seen between kidney cancer risk and either individual or combined haloacetic acid or trihalomethane measures. The data for this study are presented in Table 5-1.

5.2 Other human cancer studies of disinfection by-products

The IARC working groups reviewed several epidemiological studies (both cohort and casecontrol studies) of chlorinated water or specific disinfection by-products (i.e., trihalomethanes as a class or chloroform) primarily on urinary bladder cancer and some other types of cancer but did not make a formal evaluation of potential cancer hazards from chlorinated water because the monographs were on individual disinfection by-products. In general, IARC (2013c) reported positive associations in all nine case-control studies of DBP or chlorinated water, or both, and urinary bladder cancer, including a dose-response relationship in some studies. Among these studies, five found an association between the highest exposure levels of chlorinated water and
bladder cancer (three among all participants, one among men only and one for women only). Six studies found an association between trihalomethanes and bladder cancer, with 5 finding a dose-response relationship (three of these for men only). One study (Cantor et al. 2010) found the association varied by genetic polymorphisms in GST and CYP genes. Results from three cohort studies were inconsistent, with only one study reporting a statistically significant risk to women for exposure to chloroform; however, no dose response was seen.

Increased risk for other types of cancer was seen in a limited number of studies, with two cohort studies reporting increased risks for lung, melanoma, breast, and esophageal cancers. Increased risks for kidney, brain, melanoma, and non-melanoma skin cancers were reported in four individual case-control studies. However, neither IARC (2004a, 2004b) nor IARC (2013a, 2013b) made a formal evaluation of specific disinfection by-products, as the studies were not specific for the individual disinfection by-products under review. This complexity of exposure to a mixture and the correlation between different types of disinfection by-products make human epidemiological studies of individual chemicals difficult to conduct and interpret.

Since the IARC reviews, one case-control study in Spain was identified that found an elevated odds ratio (OR = 1.43, 95%CI = 0.83 to 2.46) for colorectal cancer and the highest level of brominated trihalomethanes (compared to lowest level), but did not find an association with total trihalomethanes (Villanueva et al. 2017). Another analysis within the Iowa Women’s Health Study also found a non-significant increase in bladder cancer for those with the highest level of nitrate-nitrogen and trihalomethane exposure (Jones et al. 2016). Based on the evidence to date, there appears to be some association with disinfection by-products and cancer, particularly with urinary bladder cancer, but the extent of the involvement of the haloacetic acids individually or as a class is unclear.

5.3 Preliminary level of evidence conclusion

Overall, the data from cancer studies in humans are inadequate to evaluate the relationship between human cancer and exposure specifically to the individual haloacetic acids, subclasses of haloacetic acid, or haloacetic acids as a class.
### Table 5-1. Haloacetic acid exposure and kidney

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference, study design, location, and year</th>
<th>Population description &amp; exposure assessment method</th>
<th>Exposure category or level</th>
<th>Exposed cases/deaths</th>
<th>Hazard ratio (95% CI)</th>
<th>Co-variates controlled</th>
<th>Comments, strengths, and weaknesses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jones et al. (2017)</strong></td>
<td>Women age 55–69 at baseline exposed to public water source for greater than 10 years. USA 1986–2010</td>
<td><strong>HAA5</strong> (µg/L) &lt; 1.89</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>Ref. 1.0</td>
<td>Age, smoking status, pack-years of smoking, body mass index, ln-transformed NO$_3$-N</td>
<td>Exposure duration: Participants included in this analysis were exposed for at least 10 years at the same location. Confounding: While difficult to separate the effects of the individual disinfection by-products, this study attempts to control for some of these factors in the analysis, along with other related factors. Strengths: Long exposure duration for participants and low loss to follow-up. The study attempted to estimate exposure levels in a systematic way for participants. Weaknesses: Lack of regular measurement at all water facilities, and lack of individual measurement for exposure, and inability to fully separate the effects of the individual disinfection by-products. Study enrollment restricted to premenopausal women.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Women exposed to public water source &gt; 10 years: N = 15,577</td>
<td>1.89–3.48</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>0.84 (0.51–1.4)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3.49–6.43</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>0.78 (0.49–1.2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 6.43</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>0.65 (0.39–1.1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>P trend</td>
<td>Continuous</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Years &gt;30 µg/L</strong></td>
<td><strong>HAA5</strong> ≤ 0</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>Ref 1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; 16</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.76 (0.37–1.6)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 16</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.74 (0.36–1.5)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>P trend</td>
<td>Continuous</td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Dichloroacetic Acid (µg/L)</strong></td>
<td>&lt; 1.65</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>Ref 1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.65–2.27</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>0.99 (0.62–1.58)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.28–4.84</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>0.79 (0.48–1.30)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 4.84</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>0.75 (0.45–1.24)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>P trend</td>
<td>Continuous</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Trichloroacetic Acid (µg/L)</strong></td>
<td>&lt; 0.25</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>Ref 1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.25–0.63</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.40 (0.18–0.89)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.64–1.69</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>0.89 (0.58–1.36)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 1.69</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>0.68 (0.42–1.10)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>P trend</td>
<td>Continuous</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference, study design, location, and year</td>
<td>Population description &amp; exposure assessment method</td>
<td>Exposure category or level</td>
<td>Exposed cases/ deaths</td>
<td>Hazard ratio (95% CI)</td>
<td>Co-variates controlled</td>
<td>Comments, strengths, and weaknesses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.99 (0.96–1.01)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bromochloroacetic Acid (µg/L)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 0.1</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ref 1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.1–0.94</td>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.20 (0.69–2.08)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.95–1.89</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.76 (0.47–1.26)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 1.89</td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.78 (0.49–1.25)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P trend</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuous</td>
<td>0.95 (0.86–1.05)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*HAA5 – regulated haloacetic acids (monochloroacetic, dichloroacetic, trichloroacetic, monobromoacetic, and dibromoacetic acids).

+ Number of years the annual average level was > ½ the MCL (maximum containment level) value.
6 Mechanistic and Other Relevant Data

Of the 13 haloacetic acids found in drinking water, six were tested for carcinogenicity in a long-term assay in experimental animals (see Section 4). Liver tumors were the most common; however, the brominated haloacetic acids induced tumors at several other sites. As stated in the background and methods section, an objective of this monograph is to evaluate whether there are other relevant data that would allow the haloacetic acids to be evaluated as a class. The purpose of this section is to address the following key questions: (1) what are the biologically plausible modes of action through which these compounds may cause cancer in humans; (2) what are molecular initiating events and/or early and late key events associated with the potential modes of action; (3) and do the haloacetic acids, or subclasses, share a common mode(s) of carcinogenic action?

To facilitate the identification of potential mechanisms of cancer, the discussion of the body of literature was generally organized according to the 10 characteristics of carcinogens as defined by Smith et al. (2016) with a few modifications. The outline of this section provides a discussion of the data starting with early events and/or overall experimental support and is as follows: electrophilicity (Section 6.1); alteration of cellular metabolism (Section 6.2, somewhat related to altered nutrient supply, which is part of one of the characteristics of carcinogens); induction of oxidative stress (Section 6.3); genotoxicity and alteration of DNA repair (Section 6.4); induction of epigenetic alterations (Section 6.5); modulation of receptor-mediated effects (Section 6.6); inhibition of GST-ζ (Section 6.7, specific proposed mode of action related to electrophilicity), cell immortalization (Section 6.8); alteration of cell proliferation or cell death (Section 6.9); and induction of chronic inflammation or immunosuppression (Section 6.10). Studies that investigated global gene expression changes are relevant to multiple characteristics of carcinogens and are discussed in Section 6.11. Section 6.12 integrates the mechanistic data and provides a brief synthesis of the findings.

6.1 Electrophilicity

Haloacetic acids are recognized as electrophilic compounds due to electron withdrawal from the α-carbon by the halogen substituents, and Sn2 reactivity (Plewa et al. 2010, Pals et al. 2011). The available data from screening studies of HAAs for protein and DNA toxicity using complementary sets of E. coli strains (see Table 6-1) indicate that most haloacetic acids have a predominantly soft electrophilic nature and that the likely molecular initiating event is preferential reaction with protein sulfhydryl groups which may result in glutathione depletion-related toxicity. However, three brominated species showed nonspecific reactivity (i.e., reaction with both proteins and DNA) in E. coli strains, and bromoiodoacetic acid was predicted to preferentially cause toxicity-based DNA damage in this screening assay. Reaction with thiol groups on proteins can cause indirect genotoxicity, or impair DNA repair through generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) (Stalter et al. 2016b). Other modes of action discussed below, including inhibition of pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase (PDK), glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH), and GST-ζ are consistent with the soft electrophilic nature of the haloacetic acids. Plewa et al. (2004b) showed that the rank order of cytotoxicity and genotoxicity of the monohaloacetic acids was correlated with their electrophilic reactivity (i.e., iodo- > bromo- ≫ chloroacetic acid). Furthermore, the brominated acetic acids consistently show a greater capacity to induce oxidative stress and a greater mutagenic and genotoxic potency compared to the chlorinated forms (see Sections 6.3 and 6.4). Whether or not this is related to a
greater capacity of the brominated di- and trihaloacetic acids to react directly with DNA has not been confirmed.

Table 6-1. Electrophilic properties of haloacetic acids

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Haloacetic acid</th>
<th>$E_{\text{LUMO}}$ (eV)</th>
<th>$E_{\text{LUMO}}$ (deprotonated)</th>
<th>TR$_{\text{GSH}}$</th>
<th>TR$_{\text{GSH}}$</th>
<th>TR$_{\text{DNA}}$</th>
<th>Classification$^b$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chloroacetic</td>
<td>4.54</td>
<td>9.43</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromoacetic</td>
<td>4.47</td>
<td>8.68</td>
<td>2.30</td>
<td>2.05</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>GSH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iodoacetic</td>
<td>2.88</td>
<td>7.18</td>
<td>2.68</td>
<td>1.61</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>GSH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dichloroacetic</td>
<td>3.07</td>
<td>8.44</td>
<td>1.55</td>
<td>1.81</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>GSH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dibromoacetic</td>
<td>2.76</td>
<td>7.51</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>GSH/DNA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromochloroacetic</td>
<td>3.11</td>
<td>7.78</td>
<td>2.24</td>
<td>1.61</td>
<td>3.18</td>
<td>GSH/DNA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloriodoacetic</td>
<td>1.54</td>
<td>6.40</td>
<td>1.39</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>1.17</td>
<td>GSH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromiodoacetic</td>
<td>1.60</td>
<td>6.46</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>DNA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trichloroacetic</td>
<td>2.79</td>
<td>7.13</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribromoacetic</td>
<td>2.42</td>
<td>6.12</td>
<td>2.39</td>
<td>2.13</td>
<td>2.61</td>
<td>GSH/DNA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromodichloroacetic</td>
<td>2.82</td>
<td>6.65</td>
<td>1.41</td>
<td>1.71</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>GSH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorodibromoacetic</td>
<td>2.47</td>
<td>6.42</td>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>$^c$</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Stalter et al. 2016b. The *E. coli* assays are used to measure differential cytotoxicity and indicate susceptibility to cytotoxic insults. $E_{\text{LUMO}}$ = energy of the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital. A lower $E_{\text{LUMO}}$ suggests a softer electrophile (Schultz et al. 2006). TR$_{\text{GSH}}$ = Toxic ratio of EC$_{50}$ of *E. coli* GSH+/GSH–, TR > 1.2 indicates reaction with soft nucleophiles. TR$_{\text{DNA}}$ = Toxic ratio of EC$_{50}$ of *E. coli* DNA repair+/DNA repair–, TR > 1.2 indicates reaction with hard nucleophiles. $^a$Values presented for two independent experiments. $^b$Indicates if compounds react preferentially with proteins (GSH), DNA, nonspecifically with both, or neither (–). $^c$Measured only in one experiment with two replicates.

6.2 Alteration of cellular metabolism

Modes of action that alter cellular energy metabolism include PDK and GAPDH inhibition (Pals et al. 2011, Dad et al. 2013, Wood et al. 2015, Pals et al. 2016). As mentioned above, inhibition of these enzymes is consistent with the soft electrophilic properties of haloacetic acids and results in disruption of cellular energy metabolism and oxidative stress. In the mitochondria, PDKs are a major gatekeeper of pyruvate entry into the tricarboxylic acid cycle while GAPDH is a cytosolic enzyme that catalyzes the sixth step of glycolysis (i.e., conversion of glucose to pyruvate) (Figure 6-1).

In one study, early life exposure to dichloroacetic acid for 10 weeks increased both the incidence and multiplicity of hepatocellular tumors in male and female mice at 98 weeks of age and was almost as carcinogenic as life-long exposures (see Section 4) (Wood et al. 2015). These authors noted that dichloroacetic acid has been characterized as a metabolic reprogramming agent because it is a structural analogue of pyruvate and inhibits PDK. PDK inhibition results in activation of the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex (PDH), thus, diverting pyruvate metabolism from the glycolytic pathway towards oxidative metabolism. Thus, a plausible mechanism of the latent carcinogenic effects of dichloroacetic acid could involve epigenetic effects leading to persistent changes in cell metabolism and PDH activation. Long-term induction of PDH and other oxidative pathways related to glucose metabolism are of unknown duration, but can promote mitochondrial stress, cell aging, cell injury, DNA damage, and potentially lead to cancer (Wood et al. 2015). Alterations in mitochondrial DNA are common events in hepatocellular
carcinoma, and oxidative stress has been proposed to be involved in the progression of hepatocellular carcinoma, although this relationship has not been fully elucidated for haloacetic acids or other liver carcinogens (Hsu et al. 2013).

The monohaloacetic acids inhibit GAPDH in a concentration-dependent manner that is highly correlated with compound reactivity following the rank order of iodo- > bromo- ≫ chloro- (Hernández-Fonseca et al. 2008, Pals et al. 2011, Dad et al. 2013, Pals et al. 2016). GAPDH inhibition blocks glucose metabolism to pyruvate and causes decreased ATP production, mitochondrial stress, increased intracellular Ca\(^{2+}\), generation of ROS, and genotoxicity. Dad et al. (2013) also showed that exogenous pyruvate supplementation enhanced ATP production in CHO cells and reduced genomic DNA damage. Treatment with calcium chelators also reduced DNA damage induced in CHO cells by bromoacetic acid (Pals et al. 2016). However, only chloroacetic acid (the weakest GAPDH inhibitor) has been tested for carcinogenicity in a long-term assay, and it was found to not be carcinogenic (NTP 1992).

In recent years, GAPDH has been implicated in other cell functions that are independent of its role in energy metabolism, including DNA repair, cell-cycle progression, and cell death (Colell et al. 2009, Zhang et al. 2015a).

![Figure 6-1. Inhibition of GAPDH and PDK by haloacetic acids and effects on glucose metabolism](image)

In normal differentiated (quiescent) cells, glucose is converted to pyruvate via glycolysis. Under aerobic conditions, most pyruvate enters the mitochondria where it is converted to acetyl-CoA by the pyruvate dehydrogenase (PDH) complex and is used to produce ATP via oxidative phosphorylation. Dichloroacetic acid (DCA) inhibits pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase (PDK), thus, enhancing oxidative metabolism and generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS). Monohaloacetic acids inhibit GAPDH, thus, blocking formation of pyruvate and inducing mitochondrial stress, decreased ATP, and generation of ROS. Adapted from Vander Heiden et al. 2009, Bruchelt et al. 2014, Lu et al. 2015.
6.3 Induction of oxidative stress


EPA’s toxicity forecaster (ToxCast) and the National Institutes of Health (NIH) Toxicology in the 21st century (Tox21) databases show that dibromoacetic acid (both ToxCast and Tox21), and tribromoacetic acid and bromochloroacetic acid (Tox21) were positive under the conditions of the assays to screen for an increase in activity of human Nrf2 transcriptional factor (oxidative stress) (https://www.epa.gov/chemical-research/toxicity-forecaster-toxcasttm-data). Bromoacetic acid, chloroacetic acid, bromodichloroacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid, and trichloroacetic acid were negative under conditions of the Tox21 assay. No other haloacetic acids were tested. The Nrf2-ARE signaling pathway is responsive to both electrophilic attack and oxidative stressors (Kensler et al. 2007).

In vitro studies (12 haloacetic acids) in human breast and liver cancer cell lines and in vivo (5 haloacetic acids) studies in rodents that compared biological markers of oxidative stress induced by three or more haloacetic acids reported the same general trends as follows: mono- > di- > trihaloacetic acids and iodinated > brominated >> chlorinated acetic acids (Figures 6-2 and 6-3) (Larson and Bull 1992, Austin et al. 1996, Pals et al. 2013, Stalter et al. 2016b). Oxidative stress was measured in vitro by activation of the Nrf2/ARE pathway and in vivo by 8-OHdG and lipid peroxidation. Details on these studies, as well as data from a few other studies, are summarized in Appendix D (Table D-1). Thus, lipid peroxidation and oxidative damage to DNA potentially play a role in the carcinogenicity of haloacetic acids, and the significantly greater levels produced by brominated haloacetic acids suggest a greater potential to induce cancer than the chlorinated forms (Austin et al. 1996). Overall, dichloro- and trichloroacetic acid showed the weakest response.
6.4 Genotoxicity and/or alteration of DNA repair

Overall, haloacetic acids have been shown to have some mutagenic activity in bacterial and mammalian cells in vitro and mixed effects regarding DNA and chromosomal damage in vitro in mammalian cells and in vivo in rodents (see Table 6-2). All 13 haloacetic acids have some...
published genotoxicity data and the mutagenic and genotoxic effects of most of these compounds have been reviewed by U.S. and international agencies (NTP 1992, EPA 2003, Richardson et al. 2007, NTP 2007a, 2009, EPA 2011a, IARC 2013a, 2013b, 2014a, 2014b, NTP 2015). In addition, the Chemical Effects in Biological Systems (CEBs) database also contains genotoxicity data for 9 haloacetic acids that have been investigated by the NTP (https://tools.niehs.nih.gov/cebs3/ui/). The genotoxicity data requested from CEBs is summarized in Appendix D, Table D-2. Dichloro- and trichloroacetic acid are the most extensively studied haloacetic acids, while genotoxicity data for the other compounds are more limited. Section 6.4.1 presents a brief summary of the findings. Studies that compared the mutagenicity/genotoxicity potency of three or more haloacetic acids are considered to be the most informative for evaluating patterns and are reviewed in more detail in Section 6.4.2. Many of these studies were included in the agency reviews.

6.4.1 Mutagenic and genotoxic effects
The mutagenic and genotoxic effects are summarized in Table 6-2 for 10 haloacetic acids (monochloro-, monobromo-, monoiodo-, dichloro-, dibromo-, bromochloro-, trichloro-, tribromo-, bromodichloro-, and chlorodibromoacetic acid). Chloroiodo-, bromoiodo-, and diiodoacetic acid are not included in this table because the only data available were limited to two studies that evaluated 12 haloacetic acids in the SOS umuC assay or the Comet assay in CHO cells. The results from these two studies are briefly mentioned in this section but are described in more detail in Section 6.4.2.

Bacteria
In general, mutagenicity and gentoxicity (reverse mutations, SOS response, and prophage induction) results in various strains of *Salmonella typhimurium* and *Escherichia coli* were mostly negative for trichloroacetic acid; weakly positive or mixed for chloro-, dichloro-, and tribromoacetic acid; and generally positive for bromo-, iodo-, dibromo-, bromochloro-, bromodichloro-, and chlorodibromoacetic acid; metabolic activation was generally not required and did not usually enhance mutagenicity (Table 6-2). Positive results were more frequent when tested with tester strains designed to detect base-pair mutations (e.g., TA100) compared to tester strains detecting frameshift mutations (e.g., TA98). Cemeli et al. (2006) reported that the mutagenicity of iodoacetic acid (identified as the most potent mutagen among the haloacetic acids) was significantly reduced by treatment with antioxidants and supported the hypothesis that haloacetic acids induce genetic damage via an oxidative stress mechanism.

No studies were available for diiodoacetic acid. The only data for chloroiodo- and bromoiodoacetic acid are from a screening study for genetic damage in *Salmonella* using the SOS umuC assay and both were positive (Stalter et al. 2016b). This study is described in more detail in Section 6.4.2.

Genetic effects in mammalian cells in vitro
*In vitro* genotoxicity studies were available for all 13 haloacetic acids. The most commonly investigated effects included DNA damage/strand breaks, gene mutations, micronuclei, and chromosomal aberrations while results for sister chromatid exchange, aneuploidy, and unscheduled DNA synthesis were only available for one haloacetic acid. Test systems included CHO cells, mouse lymphoma cells, mouse and rat hepatocytes, human lymphoblastoid cells, and a mouse fibroblast cell line (NIH3T3).
The strongest evidence for genotoxicity is that chloro-, bromo-, iodo-, dibromo-, bromochloro-, tribromo-, and chlorodibromoacetic acids induced DNA strand breaks, with weaker evidence for micronucleus formation (e.g., inconsistent findings across studies depending on the cell type) (Table 6-2). Data also suggest that some of the haloacetic acids may cause chromosomal aberrations and gene mutations albeit fewer chemicals were tested in these assays. Findings for trichloroacetic acid are less clear; however, this chemical is considered not to be genotoxic based on negative in vitro tests and inconsistent results in vivo (IARC 2014b). Although, two studies published after the IARC review reported that trichloroacetic acid induced micronuclei and chromosomal aberrations in human peripheral blood lymphocytes, there was no clear dose-response relationship, cytotoxicity issues, and deficiencies in reporting and methodology that made it difficult to interpret the results (Varshney et al. 2013, 2014). Ali et al. (2014) reported that treatment with antioxidants reduced DNA damage induced by the three monohaloacetic acids in human sperm and peripheral blood lymphocytes and micronuclei in human lymphocytes.

Several in vitro studies reported differences in DNA repair kinetics or altered expression of genes involved in DNA repair following exposure to the monohaloacetic acids or trichloroacetic acid (Komaki et al. 2009, Attene-Ramos et al. 2010, Muellner et al. 2010, Lan et al. 2016). Lan et al. (2016) reported that trichloroacetic acid induced strong responses in nucleotide excision repair and mismatch repair and a moderate response in double-strand break repair in a high-throughput toxicogenomic assay. No other haloacetic acid was tested. These results are consistent with oxidative damage to DNA. Komaki et al. (2009) reported that CHO cells treated with bromoacetic acid had a statistically significant slower rate of repair compared to cells treated with chloroacetic acid or iodoacetic acid. The different rates of genomic repair suggest that these compounds induce different DNA lesions and/or a different distribution of DNA lesions. These data are consistent with studies of monohaloacetic acids in nontransformed human cells that reported altered transcription profiles for genes involved in DNA repair, particularly the repair of double-strand DNA breaks (Attene-Ramos et al. 2010, Muellner et al. 2010).

Dmitriev and Grodzinsky (1975) reported that blue-green algae (Anacystis nidulans) exposed to iodoacetic acid prior to irradiation had an increased number of single-strand breaks and a lower rate of subsequent DNA repair.

**Genetic effects in vivo**

Although limited, the available data indicate that the haloacetic acids are not strong genotoxicants in vivo. The evidence for genotoxicity across haloacetic acids or across different types of endpoints for the same haloacetic acids was largely inconsistent, with some positive findings for DNA or chromosome damage.

In vivo genotoxicity studies were identified for eight haloacetic acids: chloro-, bromo-, dichloro-, dibromo-, bromochloro-, trichloro-, tribromo-, and bromodichloroacetic acid. Endpoints included DNA strand breaks, gene mutation, micronucleus formation, and chromosomal aberrations (Table 6-2). In general, only a few haloacetic acids were tested for each endpoint, and some haloacetic acids were tested for only a few endpoints, thus, limiting the ability to compare genotoxicity potential across haloacetic acids.

Dichloro- and trichloroacetic acid were the only haloacetic acids tested for DNA strand breaks in rodents. Results were mixed in liver but negative in other tissues (IARC 2014a, 2014b). Tribromoacetic acid did not induce DNA damage in zebrafish (Teixidó et al. 2015). Three haloacetic acids were tested for gene mutations with positive findings for dichloroacetic acid (lacI transgenic mouse liver assay), equivocal findings for chloroacetic acid (sex-linked recessive...

Eight haloacetic acids were tested for micronuclei in rodent or newt larvae, peripheral lymphocytes, or rodent bone marrow. Findings were mixed for dichloroacetic acid (NTP 2007b, IARC 2014a, Chemical Effects in Biological Systems [CEBS] 2017), trichloroacetic acid (IARC 2014b), and dibromoacetic acid (NTP 2007a, IARC 2013a) and were negative for bromochloroacetic acid (NTP 2015); bromodichloroacetic acid (NTP 2015); and chloro-, bromo-, and tribromoacetic acid (Giller et al. 1997). Chloroacetic acid did not cause chromosomal aberrations in CHO cells but there was some evidence that trichloroacetic can cause chromosome aberrations in bone marrow of mice and chickens when administered by i.p. injection.

**Mutational spectra in liver tumors**

Mouse liver tumors induced by three of the haloacetic acids (dichloro-, trichloro-, and bromodichloroacetic acid) showed different patterns in mutation frequency and/or spectra. A mutational analysis of liver tumors induced by dichloroacetic acid in male mice showed similar incidences of *H-ras* mutations (~50% to 62%) compared to spontaneous tumors in control animals (~58% to 69%) (Anna et al. 1994, Ferreira-Gonzalez et al. 1995). However, there was a shift in the spectrum of second exon *H-ras* mutations in dichloroacetic acid-treated animals, where dichloroacetic acid-induced tumors had a significantly lower incidence of CAA → AAA mutations and a significantly higher incidence of CAA → CTA mutations than spontaneous tumors. In contrast, only one *H-ras* codon 61 mutation was found out of 22 liver tumors (4.5%) examined from female mice exposed to dichloroacetic acid (Schroeder et al. 1997). In trichloroacetic acid-induced mouse liver tumors, both the incidence and mutational spectrum of *H-ras* mutations (45%) were not significantly different from spontaneous liver tumors, suggesting that trichloroacetic acid promotes the growth of spontaneously initiated hepatocytes (Ferreira-Gonzalez et al. 1995). Although these data suggest that liver tumor induction in male mice by both dichloro- and trichloroacetic acid involves activation of the *H-ras* protooncogene, the specific mechanisms are likely different between the two compounds (Ferreira-Gonzalez et al. 1995, IARC 2014a).

NTP (2015) also conducted a comparative mutation analysis of 30 hepatoblastomas and adjacent hepatocellular carcinomas in mice exposed to bromodichloroacetic acid. The incidence of *H-ras* mutations in bromodichloroacetic acid-induced hepatocellular carcinomas (13%) was about the same as observed in adjacent hepatoblastomas (7%) but was lower than in spontaneous hepatocellular carcinomas (55%). On the other hand, the incidence of *Ctnnb1* (β-catenin) mutations in treatment-related hepatocellular carcinomas (10%) was lower than in adjacent hepatoblastomas (23%) but higher than in spontaneous tumors (2%). There were no data for historical spontaneous hepatoblastomas in mice. *H-ras* codon 61 and *Ctnnb1* exons 2 and 3 mutation spectra were different for the two tumor types, and although the sample size is small, the data suggest that these tumors are distinct entities. Only two hepatoblastomas had *H-ras* mutations (both CAA → CTA) while three of four *H-ras* mutations in hepatocellular carcinomas contained CAA → CGA mutations and the other was a CAA → CTA mutation. There were no clear mutation spectrum patterns in the seven hepatoblastomas or the three hepatocellular carcinomas that contained *Ctnnb1* mutations.
Table 6-2. Summary of the mutagenic and genotoxic effects of haloacetic acids

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test system</th>
<th>Mono(haloacetic acids)</th>
<th>Dihaloacetic acids</th>
<th>Tri(haloacetic acids)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CA</td>
<td>BA</td>
<td>IA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>S. typhimurium</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TA100</td>
<td>(±)</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TA98</td>
<td>(±)</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>nr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other strains</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>nr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E. coli WP2</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reverse mutation</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>nr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λ Prophage induction</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>nr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOS chromotest</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>nr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mammalian cells</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNA damage/strand breaks</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gene mutation</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>nr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micronucleus formation</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromosomal aberrations</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sister chromatid exchanges</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>nr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aneuploidy</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>nr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unscheduled DNA synthesis</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>nr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In vivo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNA damage/strand breaks</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>nr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gene mutation</td>
<td>_ e</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>_ e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micronucleus formation</td>
<td>_ e</td>
<td>_ e</td>
<td>nr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromosomal aberrations</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>nr</td>
<td>nr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


CA = chloro-, BA = bromo-, IA = iodo-, DCA = dichloro-, DBA = dibromo-, BCA = bromochloro-, TCA = trichloro-, TBA = tribromo-, BDCA = bromodichloroacetic acid, CDBA = chlorodibromoacetic acid, nr = not reported/no data; – = negative, E = equivocal, ± = mixed results, (+) = weak positive, (±) = weak positive or negative, + = positive, ? = reported as positive but results are questionable due to deficiencies in reporting and methods.

a Results are reported without metabolic activation unless otherwise noted.
b Positive with metabolic activation.
c Positive in the fluctuation test (liquid media) with or without metabolic activation.
d Weak positive with metabolic activation in one study.
e Non-mammalian tests: newt larvae (micronucleus), zebrafish (DNA damage), Drosophila (sex-linked recessive lethal mutation).
f Only one oral study in mice, and two i.p. injection studies (mice and chickens).
6.4.2 Mutagenic and genotoxic potency

Mutagenic or genotoxic potency and cytotoxicity of three or more haloacetic acids were directly compared in several studies in bacteria (S. typhimurium strain TA100, SOS umuC assay) and mammalian cells (HGPRT mutations, Comet and p53-bla assays) (Kargalioglu et al. 2002, Plewa et al. 2004b, Richardson et al. 2008, Plewa et al. 2010, Zhang et al. 2010, Stalter et al. 2016b, Zhang et al. 2016). These data are shown in Appendix D (Tables D-3 and D-4) and are reported as the fold increase relative to the least potent haloacetic acid in each of five in vitro genetox assays in the figures below. Data for the umuC assay are plotted separately because the general trends present in the other assays are not as apparent in the umuC assay (discussed below). The SOS umuC assay is a screening test and does not provide a direct measurement of DNA damage or mutagenesis but rather measures the activation of SOS umuC-dependent error prone DNA repair. Data for a few other studies shown in Appendix D, Tables D-3 and D-4 (Ono et al. 1991, Giller et al. 1997, Attene-Ramos et al. 2010, Escobar-Hoyos et al. 2013, Procházka et al. 2015) are not included in the figures below but show the same general patterns.

The data show that the mutagenic/genotoxic potency is highly influenced by both the number and type of halogen atoms with the general rank order of potency as: mono- > di- > trihaloacetic acids and iodinated > brominated >> chlorinated acetic acids and is consistent with that reported for oxidative stress in the previous section. In fact, all haloacetic acids that were active towards DNA in bacteria or mammalian cells also induced oxidative stress (Stalter et al. 2016b).

Notable exceptions to the general trends reported above included the lack of mutagenic activity for the monohalogenated acetic acids and the high potency of brominated trihaloacetic acids, particularly tribromoacetic acid, in the SOS umuC assay (see Appendix D, Table D-3) (Stalter et al. 2016b). Stalter et al. noted that induction ratios in the umuC assay were excluded from the data analysis when cytotoxicity exceeded 50%, so the lack of mutagenic activity by monohaloacetic acids in the umuC assay may be a result of cytotoxicity masking induction of the reporter gene. However, Zhang et al. (2016) showed that the monohaloacetic acids were active in the SOS umuC assay. Therefore, Figure 6-4 integrates data for umuC for the di- and trihaloacetic acids from Stalter et al. (2016b) with data for the monohaloacetic acids from Zhang et al. (2016). Although no explanation was given for the high potency of the brominated trihaloacetic acids (especially tribromoacetic acid) in the umuC assay (Stalter et al. 2016b), the trihaloacetic acids were negative or weakly positive in other bacterial systems and in mammalian cells. Tribromoacetic acid is not included in Figure 6-4 because it exhibited a 2,500-fold increase relative to chloro- and trichloroacetic acid and appears to be an outlier.

Exceptions to the general trends observed in the in vitro genetox studies summarized in Figure 6-5 (Ames TA100 strain, HGPRT mutations, p53-bla, and Comet) include slightly more DNA damage in CHO cells exposed to dibromoacetic acid compared to bromoiodo- or diiodoacetic acid (Plewa et al. 2010), and dibromoacetic acid induced an 8-fold higher HGPRT mutant frequency in CHO cells than bromoacetic acid (Zhang et al. 2010).
Figure 6-4. Relative genotoxicity potency estimates of haloacetic acids in the SOS-umuC assay

CA = monochloro-; BA = monobromo-; IA = monoiodo-; DCA = dichloro-; DBA = dibromo-; BCA = bromochloro-; CIA = chloroiodo-; BIA = bromoiodo-; TCA = trichloro-; BDCA = bromodichloro-; CDBA = chlorodibromoacetic acid. Relative potency estimates were derived by dividing all values by the lowest value reported in Table D-3 for the designated endpoint and represent a fold increase over the lowest estimate. Data for the monohaloacetic acids, DCA, and TCA were derived from Zhang et al. (2016) and were estimated from a figure at an induction ratio of 1.5 using WebPlot Digitizer (http://arohatgi.info/WebPlotDigitizer/app/). Tribromoacetic acid value > 2,500 omitted due to scale.
Figure 6-5. Relative genotoxicity potency estimates of haloacetic acids in bacteria and mammalian cells

CA = monochloro-, BA = monobromo-, IA = monoiodo-, DCA = dichloro-, DBA = dibromo-, DIA = diiodo-, BCA = bromochloro-, CIA = chloroiodo-, BIA = bromoiodo-, TCA = trichloro-, TBA = tribromo-, BDCA = bromodichloro-, CDBA = chlorodibromoacetic acid, Relative potency estimates were derived by dividing all values by the lowest value reported in Tables D-3 and D-4 for the designated endpoint and represent a fold increase over the lowest estimate. Value of zero indicates that the compound was tested but inactive. (A) Monohaloacetic acid, (B) Di- and trihaloacetic acids.

6.5 Induction of epigenetic alterations

Three haloacetic acids (dichloro-, dibromo-, and trichloroacetic acid) induced hypomethylation of DNA and the promoter regions of oncogenes (c-myc and insulin-like growth factor 2 [IGF-II]) genes in rodents. Hypomethylation of the promoter regions leads to increased expression of these genes and may represent early events in the hepatocarcinogenicity of these haloacetic acids (Tao...
et al. 2004a, Tao et al. 2005, IARC 2013a, 2014a, 2014b). In contrast, the global methylation pattern in liver tumor and nontumor DNA harvested from mice after 98 weeks following early-life exposure to dichloroacetic acid was not altered (Wood et al. 2015). DNA methylation status has been suggested as a possible screening tool for predicting the potential carcinogenicity of the haloacetic acids (Pereira et al. 2001, Tao et al. 2004b, Kuppusamy et al. 2015). However, no clear potency trends were observed. Findings for the three compounds are summarized across studies below and the data from the individual studies are reported in Appendix D, Table D-5.

Dose-dependent hypomethylation of DNA from normal liver tissue, liver tumor, and normal kidney tissue; hypomethylation in the promoter regions of IGF-II, c-jun, and c-myc genes; and increased mRNA expression of these genes were reported in mice exposed to dichloro-, dibromo-, or trichloroacetic acid (Tao et al. 1998, Tao et al. 2000a, 2000b, Pereira et al. 2001, Pereira et al. 2004a, Tao et al. 2004a, Tao et al. 2004b, Tao et al. 2005). Dibromoacetic acid also induced liver and kidney DNA hypomethylation in male rats (Tao et al. 2004a, Tao et al. 2005). Hypomethylation patterns varied depending on the exposure conditions and type of tissue (tumor vs. non tumor).

Several studies show that hypomethylation was correlated with the carcinogenic and tumor-promoting activity of both dichloro- and trichloroacetic acid in the liver and kidney of rodents but that the mechanisms of their carcinogenic activity may be different (Tao et al. 1998, Tao et al. 2000b, Pereira et al. 2001, Pereira et al. 2004a, Tao et al. 2004b, Tao et al. 2005). Dichloro- and trichloroacetic acid-induced hypomethylation of the promoter region of the c-myc gene in mouse liver coincided with enhanced cell proliferation and suggests that these compounds induce hypomethylation by inducing DNA replication and inhibiting methylation of the newly synthesized DNA (Ge et al. 2001). When co-administered with chloroform, both trichloroacetic acid and dichloroacetic acid induced hypomethylation and promoted kidney tumors in male (but not female) mice (Pereira et al. 2001). Hypomethylation induced by haloacetic acids was also prevented by prior treatment with methionine, suggesting that haloacetic acids deplete S-adenosyl methionine levels (Tao et al. 2000a, 2000b, Pereira et al. 2004a, Pereira et al. 2004b, Tao et al. 2005).

6.6 Modulation of receptor-mediated effects

Overall, the data suggest that the carcinogenic activity of trichloroacetic acid in mouse liver is consistent with peroxisome proliferation (IARC 2004b, 2014b). The lack of a carcinogenic response in rats exposed to trichloroacetic acid may be explained by a much lower extent of peroxisome proliferation compared to mice (DeAngelo et al. 1989). In contrast, rats were more sensitive to the hepatocarcinogenicity of dichloroacetic acid than mice (DeAngelo et al. 1996).

Peroxisome proliferation, as measured by palmitoyl-CoA oxidation, appears to be a common effect of the seven haloacetic acids tested in vitro but with wide variation in potency and efficacy in cultured rat hepatocytes (Appendix D, Figure D-1) (Walgren et al. 2004). The lowest effective concentrations, based on palmitoyl-CoA oxidation, varied over about two orders of magnitude. Within the monohalo-substituted series, iodoacetic acid was more potent than bromo- or chloroacetic acid; however, no clear patterns were observed for the different halogen substitutions for the di- or trihaloacetic acid series. While monobromo- and monoiodoacetic acid induced significant increases in palmitoyl-CoA oxidation at the lowest concentrations (50 to 100 µM), higher concentrations were cytotoxic. Thus, the cytotoxicity of the monohaloacetic acids would likely limit their effectiveness as PPARα activators in vivo. Overall, dibromoacetic acid was the most effective inducer of palmitoyl-CoA reaching 6.2-fold at the maximum
concentration tested (3 mM). Dichloro-, trichloro-, and tribromoacetic acids were modest inducers of palmitoyl CoA with much flatter concentration/response curves. However, these data are not consistent with the available in vivo data discussed below.

*In vitro* studies using human cells also reported variable results. Peroxisome proliferation (as measured by palmitoyl-CoA oxidation) was not detected in one study using human cell lines exposed to dichloro- or trichloroacetic acid; however, palmitoyl-CoA oxidation was not detected in control human hepatocytes in these studies (Walgren *et al.* 2000a, 2000b). Other *in vitro* studies have shown that human PPARα is activated by both dichloro- and trichloroacetic acid (IARC 2014b). Trichloroacetic acid at concentrations > 1 mM induced comparable dose-related transactivation in human and mouse PPARα *in vitro* (Maloney and Waxman 1999).

*In vivo* studies in rats and/or mice exposed to brominated or chlorinated haloacetic acids in drinking water showed a dose-related increase in acyl-CoA oxidase activity or hepatic peroxisome proliferation for dibromo- and trichloroacetic acid and the positive control (clofibric acid) but not for other haloacetic acids tested (chloro-, dichloro-, bromochloro-, or bromodichloroacetic acid) (DeAngelo *et al.* 1989, Xu *et al.* 1995, Parrish *et al.* 1996, Tao *et al.* 2004a, NTP 2015). Dichloroacetic acid produced a small, but significant increase only at the high dose while the response to dibromoacetic acid was dose related up to 1 g/L but then declined at 3 g/L (Parrish *et al.* 1996).

Trichloroacetic acid and dichloroacetic acid are relatively weak PPARα agonists requiring mM concentrations (DeAngelo *et al.* 1996, DeAngelo *et al.* 1999, Laughter *et al.* 2004, Corton 2008, DeAngelo *et al.* 2008). However, dose-response characteristics for dichloroacetic acid show that PPARα is not activated at concentrations that induce liver tumors in either rats or mice and indicates that the mode of action of dichloroacetic acid is PPARα-independent (DeAngelo *et al.* 1996, DeAngelo *et al.* 1999). In contrast, dose-response characteristics for trichloroacetic acid show that there is a relatively good correlation between trichloroacetic acid-induced liver tumors and induction of markers of PPARα activation in the mouse (DeAngelo *et al.* 2008). In addition, markers of PPARα activation are elevated at trichloroacetic acid doses that are below or coincident with doses that induce mouse liver tumors, and trichloroacetic acid-induced mouse liver tumors have properties similar to those induced by classic peroxisome proliferators (Corton 2008, DeAngelo *et al.* 2008).

### 6.7 Inhibition of GST-ζ

GST-ζ inhibition has been suggested as a specific mode of action relevant to dihaloacetic acid-induced liver cancer in rodents; however, the available data are insufficient to fully define the key events or to assess their necessity or sufficiency for carcinogenicity. Several polymorphic variants of GST-ζ have been identified that differ in their susceptibility to inactivation (Blackburn *et al.* 2000, Hayes and Strange 2000, Tzeng *et al.* 2000, Blackburn *et al.* 2001, Fang *et al.* 2006, Cantor *et al.* 2010, Shroads *et al.* 2010, Board and Anders 2011, Li *et al.* 2012). Inhibition of GST-ζ by successive or continuous doses of dihaloacetic acids reduces metabolism and prolongs the plasma half-life (Gonzalez-Leon *et al.* 1999, Schultz *et al.* 2002).

GST-ζ, also known as maleylacetoacetate isomerase (MAAI), catalyzes the penultimate step in the tyrosine catabolism pathway and metabolizes maleylacetoacetate to fumarylacetoacetate and maleylacetone to fumarylacetone (Cortett *et al.* 1999, Schultz *et al.* 2002, Anderson *et al.* 2004, Stacpoole *et al.* 2008, Theodoratos *et al.* 2009, Board and Anders 2011, Stacpoole 2011). These reactive metabolites may accumulate following inhibition of GST-ζ, react with macromolecules, and induce oxidative stress (Blackburn *et al.* 2006). Hereditary tyrosinemia type 1 is a metabolic
disease caused by a deficiency of the enzyme involved in the last step of tyrosine catabolism. Individuals with this disease develop hepatocellular carcinoma at a young age (Tanguay et al. 1996, Stacpoole 2011).

Schultz et al. (2002) reported that dichloroacetic acid reduced MAAI activity over 80% in young mice but not in old mice suggesting that reduced MAAI activity is unlikely to be the sole carcinogenic mode of action for dichloroacetic acid and may be important only during the early stages of exposure. This conclusion is further supported by observations that GST-ζ-deficient mice do not spontaneously develop hepatocellular carcinoma (Fernández-Cañón et al. 2002, Schultz et al. 2002).

6.8 Cell immortalization

Iodo- and dibromoacetic acid (the only haloacetic acids tested) caused cell transformation in an immortalized aneuploid mouse cell line (NIH3T3 or Balb/c 3T3 cells) (Fang and Zhu 2001, Wei et al. 2013). This assay is responsive to the later stages in carcinogenic transformation (i.e., induction of morphologically transformed foci (Tanaka et al. 2012). Moreover, Wei et al. (2013) reported that iodoacetic acid-transformed cells also exhibited anchorage-independent growth, agglutination with concanavalin A, and they formed aggressive fibrosarcomas when injected into Balb/c nude mice. Cell transformation assays are capable of detecting both genotoxic and non-genotoxic carcinogens and validation studies have shown generally good concordance with rodent bioassay results and reproducibility (Corvi et al. 2012, Creton et al. 2012, Tanaka et al. 2012).

6.9 Alteration of cell proliferation and cell death

Some data suggest that dichloro- and trichloroacetic acid alter cell proliferation and apoptosis; however, the data are inconsistent and the effects appear to be transitory (reviewed in EPA 2003, 2011a, IARC 2014a, 2014b). Several studies reported hepatocyte proliferation, increased thymidine incorporation in hepatic DNA, and increased cell division rates in trichloroacetic acid-induced hepatic foci and tumors (Styles et al. 1991, Dees and Travis 1994, Pereira 1996, Stauber and Bull 1997, Channel et al. 1998, Ge et al. 2001, DeAngelo et al. 2008, IARC 2014b). Increased labeling of hepatic DNA was observed at sub-necrotic doses suggesting that cell proliferation was not due to regenerative hyperplasia (Dees and Travis 1994). Studies with dichloroacetic acid reported increased cell proliferation of c-jun-positive hepatocytes, reparative hyperplasia in the liver, increased numbers of hepatic foci and hyperplastic nodules, increased cell replication rates in altered foci, promotion of growth and survival of initiated cells, and a dose-related decrease in apoptosis (Sanchez and Bull 1990, Richmond et al. 1991, Snyder et al. 1995, Stauber and Bull 1997, Stauber et al. 1998, IARC 2014a). Other studies have suggested that dichloro- and trichloroacetic acids are not direct-acting mitogens; however, dichloroacetic acid inhibited apoptosis and synergistically enhanced the mitogenic response to epidermal growth factor (EGF) in cultured rat hepatocytes (DeAngelo et al. 1991, Walgren et al. 2005).

Increased cell proliferation has been associated with increased expression of IGF-II as this gene has both mitogenic and anti-apoptotic activity in the liver (Tao et al. 2004b). As mentioned above (Section 6.5), both trichloro- and dichloroacetic acids increased c-myc and IGF-II expression and enhanced cell proliferation in rodent liver (Ge et al. 2001, Tao et al. 2004a, Tao et al. 2004b). Stauber et al. (1998) reported that both dichloro- and trichloroacetic acid promoted the formation of anchorage-independent mouse hepatocytes in vivo and in vitro in a dose-dependent manner. The phenotypes of the anchorage-independent colonies promoted by dichloroacetic acid were primarily c-jun positive while those promoted by trichloroacetic acid
were mainly \textit{c-jun} negative, consistent with the phenotypes from liver tumors induced by these compounds. These data suggest that the mode of action of dichloro- and trichloroacetic acid may be to selectively stimulate the clonal expansion of phenotypically different populations of initiated cells.

Some \textit{in vitro} data suggest that trichloroacetic acid and dichloroacetic acid, but not iodoacetic acid, inhibit gap-junctional intercellular communication (Si \textit{et al.} 1987, Klaunig \textit{et al.} 1989, Benane \textit{et al.} 1996). Loss of gap junctional cellular communication may be an important step in carcinogenesis (Aasen \textit{et al.} 2016). No data were available for other haloacetic acids regarding effects on gap-junctional intercellular communication. Benane \textit{et al.} (1996) reported a dose- and treatment time-related inhibitory response for both haloacetic acids in a normal liver epithelial cell line from male Sprague-Dawley rats. The lowest concentration and shortest time to reduce gap-junctional intracellular communication, as measured by dye transfer, was 1 mM over 1 hour for trichloroacetic acid compared to 10 mM over 6 hours for dichloroacetic acid. Thus, trichloroacetic acid appeared to be more potent than dichloroacetic acid. Trichloroacetic acid significantly reduced dye transfer in mouse hepatocytes at 0.1 mM to 1 mM after 4 hours treatment but not after 8 hours or 24 hours (Klaunig \textit{et al.} 1989). In contrast, dye transfer was not affected in rat hepatocytes exposed to trichloroacetic acid concentrations up to 1 mM for as long as 24 hours.

\section*{6.10 Induction of chronic inflammation or immunosuppression}

The evidence that haloacetic acids induce chronic inflammation or immunosuppression is generally weak and inconsistent and neither process has been identified as a potential mode of action for dichloro-, trichloro-, bromochloro-, or dibromoacetic acid (IARC 2013a, 2013b, 2014a, 2014b). Nevertheless, some data regarding these effects were available for the chloro-, bromo-, iodo-, dichloro-, dibromo-, bromochloro-, trichloro-, and bromodichloroacetic acids and are briefly reviewed here.

In the two-year cancer bioassay studies, mild chronic inflammation in the liver was reported in male mice chronically exposed to trichloroacetic acid (DeAngelo \textit{et al.} 2008) or dichloroacetic acid (Daniel \textit{et al.} 1992) but not in rats or mice exposed to dibromo-, bromochloro-, or chlorodibromoacetic (NTP 2007a, 2009, 2015). None of the 12 haloacetic acids evaluated activated the NF-\kappaB stress-response pathway for inflammation \textit{in vitro} using the human THP-1 leukemia cell line (Stalter \textit{et al.} 2016b). However, Pals \textit{et al.} (2013) reported that the three monohaloacetic acids, at non-cytotoxic concentrations, upregulated cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) in nontransformed human intestinal epithelial cells (line FHs 74 Int), suggesting a possible inflammatory response. Bromo- and iodoacetic acids also modulated the MAPK pathway in FHs 74 Int cells which suggests a response to cell stress and inflammation (Attene-Ramos \textit{et al.} 2010).

Few studies have investigated the effects of haloacetic acids on the immune system. Neither dichloro- or trichloroacetic acid were immunotoxic in rats exposed to concentrations of up to 5 g/L in drinking water for 90 days (Mather \textit{et al.} 1990). Ohashi \textit{et al.} (2013) reported that dichloroacetic acid improved immune function and increased antitumor immunotherapeutic activity. Dibromoacetic acid did not significantly affect humoral immunity or innate immune function in mice at concentrations up to 1 g/L in drinking water for 28 days (Smith \textit{et al.} 2010a). Other studies have suggested that monoiodo-, dichloro-, dibromo-, or trichloroacetic acid induce some immune responses, including increased serum IgG and IgM in autoimmune-prone MRL\textsuperscript{+/+} mice, histological changes in the thymus and spleen, increased immune cell apoptosis, T cell...

6.11 Effects on gene expression

Toxicogenomics studies were available for chloro-, bromo-, iodo-, dichloro-, bromochloro-, trichloro-, and bromodichloroacetic acids and are discussed separately for the monohaloacetic acids and the di- and trihaloacetic acids. These data show that the haloacetic acids induce gene expression changes relevant to several of the characteristics of carcinogens and possible modes of action discussed in this monograph.

Comparative human cell toxicogenomic analysis indicated that the monohaloacetic acids altered the transcription levels of genes involved in stress response to DNA damage and regulation of different stages in cell-cycle progression or apoptosis and provide support for several of the proposed modes of action (Attene-Ramos \textit{et al.} 2010, Muellner \textit{et al.} 2010, Pals \textit{et al.} 2013). The major cell pathways affected are shown in Table 6-3. Most of these pathways show a strong association with carcinogenesis (Khanna and Jackson 2001, Plewa and Wagner 2015).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathway</th>
<th>Chloro-</th>
<th>Bromo-</th>
<th>Iodo-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ATM signaling</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cell cycle control</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclins and cell cycle regulation</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAPK signaling</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p53 signaling</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRCA1, BRCA2, and ATR mediated</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancer susceptibility and dsDNA repair</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nrf2/ARE-dependent ROS</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTGS2 (COX2)-mediated</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPO, LPO and NOX5 ROS</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GSH/GSR</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peroxiredoxin oxidative stress</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Plewa and Wagner 2015.
Blank cell = pathway not affected.

Several gene expression studies show that the di- and trihaloacetic acids induce expression changes in genes involved in oxidative stress-responsive pathways, DNA damage and repair, cell cycle progression, cell proliferation, metabolism, cancer progression, and apoptosis. However, the data are insufficient to determine any clear patterns in gene expression profiles that are related to physiochemical or toxicological properties of the haloacetic acids. These studies compared gene expression changes in normal liver tissue, preneoplastic liver nodules, and liver tumors from mice exposed to dichloro-, trichloro-, or bromodichloroacetic acid and control mice; mouse sperm or rat mesotheliomas exposed to bromochloroacetic acid; normal mammary gland tissue and tumors in rats exposed to bromodichloroacetic acid; and yeast treated with trichloroacetic acid and the data are summarized in Appendix D, Table D-6) (Nelson \textit{et al.} 1990, Choi and Park 1996, Thai \textit{et al.} 2001, 2003, Tully \textit{et al.} 2005, Kim \textit{et al.} 2006, NTP 2015, Lan \textit{et al.} 2016).
Mice exposed to dichloroacetic acid for 4 weeks showed similar gene expression profiles in liver tissue as observed in dichloroacetic acid-induced liver tumors (Thai et al. 2001, 2003). Trichloroacetic acid activated pathways involved in oxidative DNA damage and tumor progression (Nelson et al. 1990, Lan et al. 2016) while bromochloroacetic acid altered expression of genes involved in cell communication and adhesion, cell cycle and cell proliferation, metabolism, signal transduction, apoptosis, invasion, and metastasis (Tully et al. 2005, Kim et al. 2006). Distinct gene expression profiles were observed across four different tissues following bromodichloroacetic acid exposure: hepatocellular carcinomas, hepatoblastomas, and adjacent normal liver tissue from exposed rats as well as normal liver tissue from controls (NTP 2015). Gene expression changes in treatment-related nontumor liver tissue were consistent with neoplastic signaling and may suggest that microenvironment changes preceded neoplastic transformation due to chemical treatment. However, these gene expression changes may also have been influenced by the microenvironment of the adjacent hepatocellular carcinomas. The gene expression profiles of mouse hepatoblastomas were similar to early embryonic mouse livers, suggesting that these tumors arose from the transformation of a hepatic stem or multipotent progenitor cell, while hepatocellular carcinomas arose from transformed hepatocytes. Significant upregulation of eight genes was found in mammary gland tumors from rats exposed to bromodichloroacetic acid but were not found in spontaneous tumors; five of these genes were associated with TGF-beta signaling and an aggressive tumor phenotype (NTP 2015, Harvey et al. 2016).

### 6.12 Mode of action integration and synthesis

Overall, the data suggest that the haloacetic acids may induce cancer through electrophilic reactions with macromolecules leading to altered gene expression, inhibited protein function, oxidative stress, and mutagenic and genotoxic effects. The data suggest that the mechanisms are complex and likely involve multiple interactions of toxicokinetic factors and modes of action, as well as unknown factors and modes of action that may differ somewhat among the various subclasses of haloacetic acids based on halogen substitution patterns.

The potential modes of action and key events associated with the characteristics of carcinogens are listed in Table 6-4. Most compounds have been associated with most of the 10 characteristics of carcinogens and potential modes of action, with the possible exception of PPAR-alpha activation, are relevant to human cancer. Figure 6-6 identifies the specific haloacetic acids and subclasses that have been linked to a particular mode of action through *in vitro* and/or *in vivo* testing. The identification of the potential modes of action of the haloacetic acids is limited because not all 13 haloacetic acids have been tested for all of the key events. Biologically plausible modes of action with moderate to strong experimental support include oxidative damage, epigenetic alterations (i.e., DNA hypomethylation) leading to gene expression changes, GAPDH and PDK inhibition leading to metabolic reprogramming and oxidative stress, disruption of tyrosine catabolism by dihaloacetic acids via inhibition of GST-ζ, and PPARα activation. These effects are further supported by transcriptomic analyses showing that haloacetic acids affect expression of genes involved in oxidative stress response, DNA damage and repair, cell growth and proliferation, tissue remodeling, apoptosis, angiogenesis, cancer progression, fatty acid metabolism, and xenobiotic metabolism. Direct genotoxicity does not appear to be a primary mode of action for the haloacetic acids and, overall, the data suggest that oxidative stress is responsible for the mutagenic and genotoxic effects of these compounds.
Table 6-4. Possible modes of carcinogenic action for haloacetic acids and the 10 characteristics of carcinogens

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic(s) of carcinogens</th>
<th>Mode of action</th>
<th>Key events</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Electrophilicity</td>
<td>Irreversible binding to macromolecules</td>
<td>1. Haloacetic acids have an electrophilic structure that can react with peptides, proteins, or DNA to form adducts. 2. Protein or DNA adducts result in altered activity or DNA damage that advances acquisition of multiple critical traits contributing to carcinogenesis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altered nutrient supply, electrophilicity, induction of oxidative stress</td>
<td>Reprogramming cellular energy metabolism (inhibition of pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase (PDK))</td>
<td>1. Haloacetic acids inhibition of PDK increases pyruvate dehydrogenase complex activity and oxidative metabolism. 2. Increase in oxidative metabolism leads to an increase in reactive oxygen species (ROS) and oxidative stress. 3. Oxidative stress leads to acquisition of multiple, critical traits contributing to carcinogenesis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altered nutrient supply, electrophilicity, induction of oxidative stress</td>
<td>Inhibition of glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH)</td>
<td>1. Haloacetic acids inhibition of GAPDH leads to inhibition of glycolysis. 2. Inhibition of glycolysis leads to reduced ATP levels and repressed pyruvate generation. 3. Reduced pyruvate leads to mitochondrial stress, ROS generation, cytotoxicity, and DNA damage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Induction of oxidative stress</td>
<td>Oxidative stress</td>
<td>1. Haloacetic acids induce oxidative stress through multiple pathways. 2. Oxidative stress can cause mutations and damage to proteins, lipids, and DNA. 3. Mutations and damage to macromolecules activate cell-signaling pathways, induce genomic instability, and cell transformation and lead to cancer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genotoxicity and/or alteration of DNA repair</td>
<td>Mutagenicity and genotoxicity</td>
<td>1. Haloacetic acids induce genetic damage in critical genes or form pro-mutagenic adducts. 2. Insufficient or mis-match repair of genetic damage leads to fixed genetic damage. 3. Unrepaired genetic damage leads to clonal expansion of initiated cells. 4. Clonal expansion leads to tumor formation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Induction of epigenetic alterations</td>
<td>DNA hypomethylation</td>
<td>1. Haloacetic acids induce epigenetic changes (particularly DNA hypomethylation) that alter gene expression, DNA repair, and cell phenotype. 2. These changes advance acquisition of multiple critical traits contributing to carcinogenesis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrophilicity, induction of oxidative stress</td>
<td>Glutathione-S-transferase zeta (GST ζ) inhibition</td>
<td>3. Haloacetic acids bind to GST-ζ causing irreversible inhibition. 4. Deficiency in GST-ζ results in reduced metabolism and clearance of dihaloacetic acids, higher levels of tyrosine metabolites, oxidative stress, and activation of stress-response pathways. 5. Accumulation of tyrosine metabolites and oxidative stress lead to tumor formation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characteristic(s) of carcinogens</td>
<td>Mode of action</td>
<td>Key events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Modulation of receptor mediated effects | Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor α (PPARα) activation | 1. Haloacetic acids activate PPARα in the liver.  
2. PPARα activation leads to altered cell proliferation and apoptosis.  
3. Alterations in cell proliferation and apoptosis cause clonal expansion of initiated cells.  
4. Clonal expansion of initiated cells leads to tumor formation. |
| Cell immortalization, induction of epigenetic alterations, genotoxicity | Cell transformation | 1. Haloacetic acids induce genetic and/or epigenetic alterations in the target cell.  
2. These changes lead to altered gene expression and signal transduction and acquisition of a malignant phenotype including blocked cellular differentiation and morphological transformation, acquisition of an unlimited lifespan, genetic instability, anchorage-independent growth, foci formation, clonal expansion, and tumor formation. |
| Alteration of cell proliferation or cell death | Sustained cellular proliferation and suppression of apoptosis | 1. Haloacetic acids induce sustained cell proliferation, cytotoxicity and reparative hyperplasia, and/or decreased programmed cell death (apoptosis) in target tissues.  
2. Increased cell proliferation and reduced apoptosis.  
3. Increases the probability that initiated cells will form and survive.  
4. Survival of initiated cells leads to clonal expansion, foci formation, and tumor formation. |

Figure 6-6. Interactions of potential modes of action and key events associated with haloacetic acid-induced carcinogenicity

MOA = mode of action, MIE = molecular initiating event, HAA = haloacetic acid, PPARα = peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor alpha, GAPDH = glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase, PDK = pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase, GST-ζ = glutathione S-transferase-zeta, ? = uncertain.
7 Evaluation of Haloacetic Acids as a Class or Subclass(es)

Since only 6 of the 13 haloacetic acids considered in this monograph have been tested for carcinogenicity in experimental animals, the primary purpose of this section is to evaluate whether or not the carcinogenic potential of any or all of the haloacetic acids that have not been tested in long-term animal cancer bioassays could be reasonably predicted based on application of read-across like principles and methods. The key questions addressed in this section are as follows:

1. Can haloacetic acids be evaluated as a class or subclass(es) for potential carcinogenicity based on a common mode(s) of carcinogenic action or key intermediate events that are relevant to carcinogenicity?

2. Can a read-across (e.g., QSAR) model and/or other models help inform the evaluation of the carcinogenicity of haloacetic acids that do not have animal carcinogenicity studies?

7.1 Approach and methods

A read-across like approach was used to determine whether haloacetic acids could be evaluated as a class or subclass(es) or if this approach could be applied to individual haloacetic acids that do not have cancer data. Read-across is a data gap-filling technique used with an analogue or category (group of chemicals whose physico-chemical, metabolic, and toxicological properties are likely to be similar or follow a regular pattern based on structural similarity) approach (ECHA 2008, Patlewicz et al. 2015). In the read-across approach, endpoint information for a tested chemical (source) is used to predict the same endpoint for another chemical (target) which is considered similar (Patlewicz et al. 2015, Schultz et al. 2015). Haloacetic acids as a class were judged to fit the general definition of a chemical category based on chemical structure, properties, and generally consistent patterns in toxicokinetics and toxicology. OECD (2017) defines a chemical category as, “a group of chemicals whose physicochemical and human health and/or ecotoxicological properties and/or environmental fate properties are likely to be similar or follow a regular pattern, usually as a result of structural similarity.” In this context, the use of a read-across like approach is intended to predict carcinogenicity for haloacetic acids that have not been tested in a cancer bioassay.

Two general approaches are described here: (1) a category approach in which a group of haloacetic acids, consisting of either all 13 molecules or a chemically defined subclass with fewer haloacetic acids can be evaluated together, and (2) evaluation of individual haloacetic acids using metabolism data and/or an analogue approach. The first approach would use basic read-across like methods to determine if data gaps can be filled and would include an evaluation of all the relevant data presented in the previous sections of this monograph to determine if it is feasible to consider all haloacetic acids or a specific subclass of haloacetic acids as a category based on carcinogenicity (Section 7.2). The second approach will determine if individual haloacetic acids (without cancer data) could be evaluated as metabolites and/or with an analogue approach to read-across based on similar metabolic pathways and toxicokinetic data when compared to related chemicals (i.e., analogues) with cancer data (Section 7.3). The methods for the two variations of the category approach are described below in Sections 7.1.1 for all 13 haloacetic acids and 7.1.2 for potential subclasses, and the methods for the analogue approach are described in Section 7.1.3. The application of the category approach for all 13 haloacetic acids is discussed in Section 7.2, that for a subclass of haloacetic acids in Section 7.3, and the analogue approach in Section 7.4.
7.1.1 Approach for evaluating haloacetic acids as a class

The primary methods for the read-across like approach for evaluating haloacetic acids as a class include (1) a comparison of the mechanistic data based on the characteristics of carcinogens across the different haloacetic acids, (2) an assessment of QSAR evaluations of haloacetic acids reported in the literature for biological effects, and (3) a comparison of cancer potency using QSAR modeling and reported animal cancer data for haloacetic acids.

The general trends in potency estimates for various mechanistic endpoints and chemical properties of the 13 haloacetic acids are shown in a heat map in Table 7-1, which summarizes data previously described in Section 1 (chemical properties), Section 3 (toxicokinetics), Section 4 (animal carcinogenicity), and Section 6 (mechanistic and other relevant data) that provide information potentially related to toxicity and carcinogenicity of HAAs. This table includes toxicokinetic data, physicochemical properties (pKa, ELUMO, and binding affinity for proteins and DNA), in vitro and in vivo data for several key events potentially associated with carcinogenicity (see Section 6, Figure 6-6), and animal carcinogenicity (see Section 4). Each row in the table is independently scored and ranked on a color scale with darker to lighter shades indicating high to low value or potency, white representing negative (N) results, and gray denoting no data. Most of the data in Table 7-2 were derived from the potency estimates discussed in Section 6 and tabulated in Appendix D.

Carcinogenic potency was assessed using two quantitative measures (both expressed as mg/kg body weight per day) – a QSAR model for predicting TD$_{50}$ values (chronic dose rate that would induce tumors in half the animals tested) and benchmark doses (BMDs) as 95% lower confidence corresponding to a 10% response level (BMDLs). The TD$_{50}$ values were predicted for all 13 haloacetic acids using a readily available open source QSAR model, the ADMET Predictor™ version 7.2 chronic carcinogenicity model (http://www.simulations-plus.com/software/admet-property-prediction-qsar/), for both rats and mice based on the parent compound structure and default settings. BMDL values for trichloro- and dichloroacetic acids were available from EPA’s Integrated Risk Information System (IRIS) database (available at https://www.epa.gov/iris) and BMDL values for combined liver tumors in male mice (dibromo-, bromochloro-, and bromodichloroacetic acid were available from NTP studies (CEBS database available at https://cebs.niehs.nih.gov/multistage/). Predicted BMDLs and estimated TD$_{50}$s (reported as reciprocals) are included in Table 7-1.

In addition, a subjective measure of carcinogenic potency was derived from the results of the animal cancer bioassays and results are included in Table 7-1. Values of 0 to 3 were assigned as follows: N = negative response, 1 = liver tumors in mice only, 2 = liver tumors in mice and rats, and 3 = liver and other tumor sites in rats and mice.

7.1.2 Approach for evaluating subclasses of haloacetic acids

The approach for evaluation of subclasses of haloacetic acids is essentially the same as for the set of 13 haloacetic acids, but by making subclasses based on similar chemical structures, e.g., number of halogens or type of halogen substitutions, it might be possible to apply the read-across like methods described above to a set of molecules with more consistent chemical characteristics.

7.1.3 Approach for evaluating haloacetic acids for a potential analogue approach

The approach for identifying potential analogues among haloacetic acids uses one molecule with tumorigenicity data as a source chemical to inform the potential tumorigenicity of a second haloacetic acid that has not been tested in a cancer bioassay. Reasons for selecting a source chemical or chemicals for a target haloacetic acid include metabolism, which could provide
direct evidence that the tumorigenic source chemical is metabolized to the target chemical and similarities of physicochemical properties that are related to potential key events in carcinogenicity.

7.2 Evaluation of haloacetic acids as a class

Overall, studies of metabolism, clearance, cytotoxicity, genotoxicity, and other non-cancer adverse effects among the haloacetic acids provide some evidence that haloacetic acids could be considered as a class or subclass. As mentioned in Section 6, the haloacetic acids are generally considered soft electrophiles and the likely molecular initiating event is reaction with protein sulphydryl groups. Reaction with proteins can cause indirect genotoxicity through generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) (Stalter et al. 2016b). The available studies found a strong relationship for greater toxic potency with larger halogen size (i.e., iodo- > bromo- ≫ chloro-) and decreasing toxicity with an increasing degree of halogenation (i.e., mono- > di- > tri-) (see Table 7-1). There are some exceptions to the general trends (e.g., trichloroacetic acid is the strongest PPARα agonist while dichloroacetic acid shows low activity for many of the key events). In cases where data were available for only a few of the haloacetic acids (e.g., GST-ζ inhibition, in vivo genetic effects or oxidative stress), the trends are not as evident because of incomplete data.

QSAR techniques have also successfully predicted several biological properties of the haloacetic acids as a category and have established similarity patterns among these chemicals. Two independent in vitro studies investigated different biological effects (oxidative stress and genotoxicity, and neural tube defects in mouse embryo cultures) of the haloacetic acids and reported that although the relative potency of the mono-, di-, and trihaloacetic acids was not highly correlated with any single property, there was a strong correlation when two chemical properties were considered together as independent variables: energy of the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital ($E_{LUMO}$) and the acid dissociation constant ($pK_a$) (Richard and Hunter 1996, Stalter et al. 2016b). A series of QSAR models further indicated that these two molecular parameters account for two opposing trends in the data: $E_{LUMO}$ was related to the intrinsic reactivity and correlated with increasing potency with halogen size, especially among the monohaloacetic acids. On the other hand, $pK_a$ was related to transport and bioavailability and correlated with decreasing potency with an increasing degree of halogenation within a series (i.e., bromo- > dibromo- > tribromoacetic acid) and increasing potency with halogen size among the di- and trihaloacetic acids (Richard and Hunter 1996). Related parameters that have shown moderate to strong correlations with cytotoxicity and/or genotoxicity of haloacetic acids include the log octanol/water partition coefficient ($log K_{ow}$), carbon-halogen bond length, and relative SN2 reactivity (Plewa et al. 2004b, Plewa et al. 2010, Pals et al. 2011).

Although the data show consistent trends in potency for many of the potential key events involved in the toxicity of these compounds, their relationship to carcinogenic potency is unknown. In addition, the available carcinogenicity data do not appear to support evaluating haloacetic acids as a class. Using a subjective measure of carcinogenicity (described above), the trend observed with the carcinogenicity data is somewhat consistent with the trends observed with other endpoints (i.e., brominated > chlorinated forms and dichloroacetic acid > trichloroacetic acid) but does not distinguish between di- or trihaloacetic acids containing at least one bromine atom. Moreover, chloroacetic acid also presents a challenge because the data do not explain the absence of rodent carcinogenicity when this compound shows a greater or similar genotoxic and oxidative stress potency than the di- or trihaloacetic acids. However, the
**Table 7-1. Comparison of relative potency estimates for mechanistic endpoints and chemical properties of haloacetic acids**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endpoint</th>
<th>Monohaloacetic acids</th>
<th>Dihaloacetic acids</th>
<th>Trihaloacetic acids</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CA</td>
<td>BA</td>
<td>IA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxicokinetics*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral bioavailability (%)</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbound fraction (%)</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total clearance (mL/kg/h)</td>
<td>262</td>
<td>267</td>
<td>491</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal (% of total)</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-renal (% of total)</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>98.9</td>
<td>97.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemical properties*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pKa</td>
<td>2.97</td>
<td>2.96</td>
<td>2.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TR&lt;sub&gt;GSH&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>2.18</td>
<td>2.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TR&lt;sub&gt;DNA&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>0.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxidative stress in vitro&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARE&lt;sub&gt;c32&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>192</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARE-blal</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>90.9</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxidative stress in vivo&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-OHdG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBARS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genetox in vitro</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOS-umuC&lt;sup&gt;c,e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>2400</td>
<td>15400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ames TA100 (-S9)&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>6588</td>
<td>14129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ames TA100 (-S9)&lt;sup&gt;j&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comet CHO cells&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2439</td>
<td>58820</td>
<td>114900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HGPRT CHO cells&lt;sup&gt;i&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td>14.6</td>
<td>836</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trp5-bla&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>5882</td>
<td>105260</td>
<td>212770</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genetox in vivo&lt;sup&gt;j&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPARα in vitro&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPARα in vivo&lt;sup&gt;j&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GST-ζ inhibition&lt;sup&gt;m&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal carcinogenicity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Species/tumor site&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TD&lt;sub&gt;50&lt;/sub&gt; rat (predicted)&lt;sup&gt;v&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.0041</td>
<td>0.0025</td>
<td>0.0015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TD&lt;sub&gt;50&lt;/sub&gt; mouse (predicted)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.0021</td>
<td>0.0012</td>
<td>0.0007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMDL&lt;sup&gt;p&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.08</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Darker to lighter shade = high to low value or potency, white = negative (N), gray = no data.
b $pK_a$ = the negative log of the acid dissociation constant (lower $pK_a$ indicates stronger acid and greater dissociation at physiological pH); $E_{\text{LUMO}}$ = energy of the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital (lower value indicates softer electrophile); TR = toxicity ratio ($TR_{\text{GSH}} > 1.2$ suggest the compound is a soft electrophile and preferentially reacts with protein, $TR_{\text{DNA}} > 1.2$ indicates hard electrophile and preferentially reacts with DNA, both values > 1.2 indicates unspecific reactivity) (Stalter et al. 2016b).
c $1/EC_{IR1.5}$: Effective concentration that elicits an induction ratio of 1.5 (i.e., 1.5-fold or 50% effect increase compared to the control) (Stalter et al. 2016b).
d $8\text{-OHdG/10}^5 \text{dG liver, TBARS: nmol malondialdehyde/g liver}$ (Larson and Bull 1992, Austin et al. 1996).
e $1/EC_{IR1.5}$ (Stalter et al. 2016b, Zhang et al. 2016).
f revertants/µmol, adjusted for cytotoxicity where reported (Kargalioglu et al. 2002, Plewa et al. 2004b).
g revertants/µmol (CEBs database). Note: CEBS data are not directly comparable to Plewa et al. and Kargalioglu et al. because of different methods.
h $1/\text{genotoxic potency}$ (i.e., HAA concentration calculated using regression analysis at the midpoint of the curve within a concentration range that expressed > 70% cell viability) (Plewa et al. 2010).
i Mutant frequency/mM (Zhang et al. 2010).
j $1 = $ positive, $0.5 = $ weak positive, $0 = $ negative (NTP 2007b, 2009, IARC 2013a, 2013b, 2014a, 2014b, NTP 2015).
k $1/LEC$ (lowest effective concentration) (Walgren et al. 2004).
l Fold increase compared to control (Acyl-CoA oxidase activity (DeAngelo et al. 1989, Xu et al. 1995, Parrish et al. 1996, NTP 2015).
m % reduction enzyme activity compared to controls (Anderson et al. 1999, Gonzalez-Leon et al. 1999).
$n = $ no evidence of carcinogenicity, $1 = $ liver tumors in mice only, $2 = $ liver tumors in rats and mice, $3 = $ multiple tumor sites in rats and mice.
o ADMET Predictor™ software.
p $1/\text{mg/kg/day}$ for Benchmark dose low (BMDL) values (EPA at https://www.epa.gov/iris and CEBS at https://tools.niehs.nih.gov/cebs3/ui/).
maximum dose tested by oral exposure in mice was much lower (100 mg/L) than that used for the other tested haloacetic acids (at least 1,000 mg/L) because of high toxicity of chloroacetic acid. The estimated TD50s and published BMDLs for carcinogenicity do not follow these general trends. The QSAR predicted TD50s for carcinogenicity of all 13 haloacetic acids based on structural attributes and default settings were within one order of magnitude of each other, did not predict that chloroacetic acid would be inactive as a rodent carcinogen, and predicted that trichloroacetic acid was the most potent. The published BMDL values (liver tumors in male mice) for dichloro-, dibromo-, bromochloro-, trichloro-, and bromodichloroacetic acid ranged from 1.5 to about 25 mg/kg/day, thus, they do not provide sufficient separation to determine a potency trend with any degree of confidence and also indicated that trichloroacetic acid was the most potent.

In addition, the mechanisms by which haloacetic acids induce carcinogenic effects in experimental animals have not been conclusively determined and remain as a large source of uncertainty for read-across, especially for an apical endpoint as complex as carcinogenicity. There is also evidence that, at least for dichloroacetic acid and trichloroacetic acid, the modes of action are likely different based on species affected and dose response of tumor formation, liver tumor mutation spectra, toxicokinetics, PPARα activation, liver pathology, and tumor phenotypes (Bull et al. 1990, Anna et al. 1994, Ferreira-Gonzalez et al. 1995, Pereira and Phelps 1996, Stauber et al. 1998, Bull 2000, Bull et al. 2002, Corton 2008).

Based on the lack of a well-defined mechanism or mode(s) of action, combined with evidence that at least some of the haloacetic acids do not share a common mode(s) of action, the lack of a clear trend in carcinogenic potency, the absence of carcinogenic activity of chloroacetic acid in rodents, and the lack of a suitable QSAR model, the current data do not support considering all 13 haloacetic acids as a chemical class.

### 7.3 Potential haloacetic acid subclasses

Although the current data were judged insufficient to support evaluating the set of 13 haloacetic acids as a category, the data were examined to determine if subclasses of haloacetic acids (see Table 7-2) could potentially be evaluated using a category approach. One consideration for this approach is the possibility that different mechanisms might exist for different subclasses of haloacetic acids. Potential analogues within each subclass were also considered to determine if haloacetic acids with cancer data could be matched with a target chemical (without cancer data) to predict the carcinogenicity of that target chemical.

Overall, available data did not identify any subclass (i.e., category based on number or type of halogen substitution) of haloacetic acids that could be evaluated for carcinogenicity because of the lack of a common mode of action, the lack of adequate cancer data, and/or inconsistencies in the cancer data among the members of that subclass. Of the subclasses of haloacetic acids, the confidence for a potential category for using read-across approaches was highest for subclasses that include brominated haloacetic acids, which are more similar with respect to tumor profiles, than those subclasses that included the chlorinated haloacetic acids (i.e. chloroacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid and trichloroacetic acid). The subclass with the highest potential was the di- and trihaloacetic acids which includes three members with animal cancer data (dichloroacetic acid, bromochloroacetic acid, dibromoacetic acid) and three members without animal cancer data (chlorodibromoacetic acid, tribromoacetic acid, bromoiodoacetic acid). A strength of this
approach is that chlorodibromoacetic acid and tribromoacetic acid are metabolized to the two dihaloacetic acids with animal cancer data. However, a read-across approach for the other members of a subclass without animal cancer data (bromodiodooacetic acid) is more uncertain because of the lack of direct experimental evidence for effects of substitution of bromine or chlorine atoms with iodine on tumorigenicity. Additional toxicological data on key events may contribute to a better understanding of the mode(s) of action and could reduce uncertainty in the read-across of haloacetic acids in the future.

Even though no category could be identified for the 13 haloacetic acids as a class or for subclasses within the set, application of an analogue approach (see Section 7.1.3) is possible for chlorodibromoacetic acid and tribromoacetic acid, which is described in Section 7.4. Potential analogues within each subclass are identified in the Rationale column.

Table 7-2. Evaluation of subclasses of haloacetic acids

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subclass</th>
<th>Members*</th>
<th>Confidence for potential category</th>
<th>Rationale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monohaloacetic acids</td>
<td>CA, BA, IA</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>CA tested negative in a long-term cancer bioassay. IA was positive in the cell transformation assay. Insufficient data to read-across to BA or IA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dihaloacetic acids</td>
<td>DCA, DBA, DIA, BCA, CIA, BIA</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>DCA, DBA, and BCA are rodent carcinogens and are potential analogues for read-across to the iodinated compounds; however, more uncertainty regarding impact of iodine substitution on carcinogenicity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trihaloacetic acids</td>
<td>TCA, TBA, BDCA, CDBA</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>TCA and BDCA tested positive in cancer bioassays. TCA may cause liver cancer via different mechanisms than other haloacetic acids.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorinated acetic acids</td>
<td>CA, DCA, BCA, CIA, TCA</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>All but CIA have been tested in long-term cancer bioassays; however, the negative findings of CA in cancer studies present a challenge for read-across, and result in increased uncertainty.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Potential analogues: BDCA could be used as an analogue for potential read-across to CDBA, which is also metabolized to BCA. There is more uncertainty with read-across to TBA.

* Potential analogues: BCA could be a potential analogue for read-across to CIA.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subclass</th>
<th>Members*</th>
<th>Confidence for potential category</th>
<th>Rationale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brominated acetic acids</td>
<td>BA, DBA, BCA, BIA, TBA, BDCA, CDBA</td>
<td>Maybe Low/moderate</td>
<td>DBA, BCA, and BDCA are rodent carcinogens. DBA is metabolized to DBA and CDBA is metabolized to BCA. The uncertainty for this subclass is based on lack of carcinogenicity with CA and a possible unique mode of action for the monohaloacetic acids.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iodinated acetic acids</td>
<td>IA, DIA, CIA, BIA</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>None of the members have been tested in a long-term cancer bioassay. The modes of action may not be the same for the mono- and dihaloacetic acids containing iodine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brominated di- and trihaloacetic acids</td>
<td>DBA, BCA, BIA, TBA, BDCA, CDBA</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>DBA, BCA, and BDCA are rodent carcinogens. Based on similarity of tumor profiles and trends in metabolism, toxicokinetcs, physicochemical properties, and potential key events, the mode of action for this subclass is possibly similar. However, the similarities are greater within the dihalo- and trihaloacetic acids than across these molecules.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Potential analogues: BCA is a potential analogue for read-across to BIA, but more uncertainty as noted above. BDCA is a potential analogue for read-across to CDBA, which is also metabolized to BCA.

Potential analogues: TBA is metabolized directly to DBA and CDBA is metabolized to BCA. In addition, BDCA is a potential analogue for read-across to both CDBA and TBA. Read-across to BIA is more uncertain as noted above.

CA = chloro-, BA = bromo-, IA = iodo-, DCA = dichloro-, DBA = dibromo-, BCA = bromochloro-, DIA = diiodo-, CIA = chloroiodo-, BIA = bromoiodo, TCA = trichloro-, TBA = tribromo-, BDCA = bromodichloroacetic acid, CDBA = chlorodibromoacetic acid.

### 7.4 Individual di- and tribromohaloacetic acids.

Based on their metabolism to known rodent carcinogens, both bromochloroacetic acid and dibromoacetic acid are predicted to cause cancer in rodents. Chlorodibromo- and tribromoacetic acid are directly metabolized to bromochloro- and dibromoacetic acid, respectively (see Section 3 and 7.4.1 below) and both dihaloacetic acids, as well as bromodichloroacetic acid (which could also be a potential analogue), have been shown to be rodent carcinogens (see Section 4). Thus, dibromoacetic acid was selected an analogue for read-across to tribromoacetic acid and bromochloroacetic acid is an analogue for read-across to chlorodibromoacetic acid based on their metabolism and similar physicochemical properties, toxicokinetics properties, and biological...
effects *in vivo* and *in vitro* (e.g., similar potencies for genetic and oxidative stress) (see Table 7-1). Supporting evidence for these conclusions is discussed below.

7.4.1 *Metabolism and toxicokinetics*

Trihaloacetic acids are primarily metabolized by reductive dehalogenation that generates a dihaloacetic acid via a free radical intermediate (Xu *et al.* 1995, Austin and Bull 1997, Anderson *et al.* 1999, Saghir *et al.* 2011). Saghir *et al.* (2011) demonstrated that reductive dehalogenation of tribromoacetic acid *in vitro* by a rat liver enzyme preparation (microsomes) produced dibromoacetic acid in a 1:1 molar ratio with the bromide ion (Br\(^{-}\)) liberated and there was no evidence of additional oxidative metabolism. This study also demonstrated that bromodichloro-, chlorodibromo-, and tribromoacetic acids were rapidly metabolized by rat liver microsomes to the di-haloacetic acid product corresponding to the loss of a single Br\(^{-}\). Further, substitution of bromines enhanced metabolism, thus, tribromo- and chlorodibromo- are metabolized to their corresponding dihaloacetic acid to a much greater degree than trichloroacetic acid (Schultz *et al.* 1999, Saghir *et al.* 2011). (See Section 3 for a more complete discussion of metabolism and toxicokinetics.)

7.4.2 *Carcinogenicity data*

Near lifetime exposure to bromodichloroacetic acid and dibromoacetic acid in the drinking water caused liver tumors in mice as well as tumors at other tissue sites (listed in Table 7-3) in rats and mice. Thus, chlorodibromoacetic acid and tribromoacetic acid are predicted to be animal carcinogens based on metabolism to bromochloroacetic acid and dibromoacetic acid, respectively. Moreover, all of the di- and tri-haloacetic acids tested caused liver tumors in mice, which increases the confidence that chlorodibromoacetic acid and tribromoacetic acid would specifically cause liver tumors in mice. The three tested brominated di-and trihaloacetic acids, (dibromo-, bromochloro- and bromodichloroacetic acids), which are the postulated source chemicals, also caused malignant mesothelioma in male rats. Based on the greater metabolism of the brominated trihaloacetic acids compared to trichloroacetic acid, and the generally greater biological and carcinogenic activity with bromine substitution for chlorine, it is expected that the tumor profiles of chlorodibromoacetic and tribromoacetic acids will be more similar to their direct metabolites (bromochloroacetic acid and dibromoacetic acid, respectively) than the carcinogenicity of trichloroacetic acid and its metabolite dichloroacetic acid. Although no *in vivo* studies were identified for metabolism of trichloroacetic acid to dichloroacetic acid, oral exposure to trichloroethylene in mice resulted in dichloroacetic acid serum levels of only 0.048% of the trichloroacetic acid serum levels two hours after exposure (Kim *et al.* 2009) and unlike dichloroacetic acid, trichloroacetic acid administration in a 2-year cancer bioassay did not produce liver tumors in rats (NTP 1992, DeAngelo *et al.* 1996). The dihalogenated metabolites may not account for all of the carcinogenic potential of the trihaloacetic acids because bromodichloroacetic acid induced more tumor types in rodents than its primary metabolite, dichloroacetic acid.
Table 7-3. Tumor profiles in source chemicals and predicted tumor profiles in target chemicals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endpoint</th>
<th>Source chemicals</th>
<th>Target chemicals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BCA (metabolite)</td>
<td>DBA (metabolite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rats (sex)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver (M/F)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mononuclear-cell leukemia (F)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignant mesothelioma (M)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mammary (F)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mice (sex)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver (M/F)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lung (M)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harderian gland (M)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BCA = bromochloro-, DBA = dibromo-, BDCA = bromodichloro-, CDBA = chlorodibromo-, TBA = tribromoacetic acid, “Likely” or “Very likely” tumor sites are based on metabolism to BCA and DBA, tumor profiles of metabolites or source chemicals and support from mechanistic and other relevant data.

7.4.3 Supporting mechanistic data

In general, chlorodibromoacetic acid and tribromoacetic acid have similar toxicokinetic and biological effects compared with other brominated haloacetic acids that cause cancer in rodents (Tables 7-1, and 7-3). Physicochemical properties also show that the electrophilicity increases with bromine content and that the trihaloacetic acids are stronger acids than the dihaloacetic acids. The available data for these two chemicals provide evidence that they also cause oxidative stress and genetic effects, e.g., mutations in bacteria and DNA strand breaks in cultured cells. These events are characteristic of other human carcinogens and support biological plausibility for the carcinogenicity of chlorodibromoacetic and tribromoacetic acids in humans.

7.4.4 Conclusions

The set of 13 haloacetic acids considered in this monograph did not form a category to evaluate all of them as a class because of (1) the lack of a well-defined mechanism or mode(s) of action, (2) data that suggest that at least some of the haloacetic acids do not share a common mode(s) of action, (3) the absence of carcinogenicity of chloroacetic acid, and (4) the lack of a clear trend in carcinogenic potency. QSAR model predictions of cancer potency were not consistent with the trends in the key events data. Therefore, the current data are inadequate to support considering all 13 haloacetic acids as a chemical class.

Subclasses of haloacetic acids based on number and types of halogen substitutions were also considered for making read-across predictions of carcinogenicity. The major limitations in the confidence for the read-across analyses are the lack of cancer data for any iodohalacetic acids or monoacetic acids, the negative findings for chloroacetic acid (even though tested at a much lower dose in mice than other haloacetic acids), and data suggesting that trichloroacetic acid may cause cancer by different modes of action than dichloroacetic acid. None of the subclasses of...
haloacetic acids considered for read-across were considered to have sufficient evidence at this time to support their use as a category.

Consideration of one subclass with six di- and tribrominated haloacetic acids (dibromo-, bromochloro-, bromoiodo-, tribromo-, bromodichloro-, and chlorodibromoacetic acids) led to identification of two individual trihaloacetic acids as target chemicals for read-across based on metabolism and supporting mechanistic data. Cancer predictions were made for two members of this class that did not have cancer data: (1) tribromoacetic acid, which is metabolized to dibromoacetic acid (the source analogue), and (2) chlorodibromoacetic acid, which is metabolized to bromochloroacetic acid (which is the source analogue). Bromodichloroacetic acid is also a rodent carcinogen with similar physicochemical, toxicokinetic, and toxicological properties as the target chemicals, which provides additional support for the conclusion that both tribromoacetic acid and chlorodibromoacetic acid are reasonably anticipated to be rodent carcinogens.
8 Overall Cancer Evaluation and Preliminary Listing Recommendation

The purpose of this monograph is to assess the carcinogenicity data for 13 haloacetic acids found in water disinfection by-products and to determine whether the scientific evidence meets the RoC criteria for listing as a class, subclasses, or as individual haloacetic acids. The overall evaluation integrates the assessments of the animal cancer studies (Section 4, Section 8.1), mechanistic and other relevant data (Section 6, Section 8.2), as well as the read-across analysis for evaluating haloacetic acids as a class or subclasses, to reach preliminary listing conclusions (see Figure 1 in Background and Methods).

Overall, the data from cancer studies in humans are inadequate to evaluate the relationship between human cancer and exposure specifically to the individual haloacetic acids, subclasses of haloacetic acid, or haloacetic acids as a class, as only one study was identified that provided risk estimates specific for a class of, or for individual haloacetic acids. However, studies on water disinfection by-products suggest the potential for cancer risk from chlorinated water and increase the confidence of the relevance of the animal cancer studies (conducted at higher doses) to humans.

8.1 Evidence of carcinogenicity from studies in experimental animals

There is sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity for dichloroacetic acid, dibromoacetic acid, bromochloroacetic acid, and bromodichloroacetic acid from studies in experimental animals.

The conclusion for each of these haloacetic acids is based on significantly increased incidences of malignant tumors or a combination of benign and malignant tumors at several organ sites in rodents or in several species by exposure in drinking water (see Section 4, Tables 4-1 and 4-3, and Table 8-1 below). Exposure to dichloroacetic acid induced liver tumors (hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma) in male Fischer 344 rats and in male and female B6C3F1 mice. Exposure to dibromoacetic acid, bromochloroacetic acid, and bromodichloroacetic acid induced liver tumors (hepatocellular adenoma, carcinoma) in both sexes and hepatoblastoma in male B6C3F1 mice and tumors at other sites in male and female Fischer 344 or Fischer 344N/Tac rats (for bromodichloroacetic acid). These three haloacetic acids all induced malignant mesothelioma in male rats and bromochloroacetic acid and bromodichloroacetic acid induced mammary gland tumors (fibroadenoma, carcinoma) in female rats. Bromodichloroacetic acid exposure also resulted in malignant skin tumors in male rats. Bromochloroacetic acid induced tumors in the large intestine in both sexes of rats. Although the large intestinal tumors were adenoma, they are considered to be supportive of a carcinogenic response because of their rarity and progression to malignant tumors. Dibromoacetic acid also induced lung tumors (alveolar/bronchiolar carcinoma) in male B6C3F1 mice and bromodichloroacetic acid induced Harderian gland (benign or malignant) tumors in male rats.

The evidence of carcinogenicity from studies in experimental animals is not sufficient to meet the RoC criteria for listing monochloroacetic acid, monoiodoacetic acid, or trichloroacetic acid (TCA). Exposure to monochloroacetic acid by gavage did not induce tumors in male and female B6C3F1 mice or Fischer 344 rats. Monoiodoacetic acid applied dermally in a co-carcinogen study with 7,12 dimethylbenz[a]anthracene (DMBA) in mice (strain and sex not given) resulted
in papillomas. In addition, monoiodoacetic acid transformed NIH3T3 cells in a cell-transformation assay that resulted in aggressive fibrosarcomas after injection into Balb/c mice. Exposure to trichloroacetic acid in drinking water induced liver tumors in male and female B6C3F1 mice but not in male F344 rats (female rats not tested) and did not induce tumors in male mice with intraperitoneal injection. No cancer studies in experimental animals were available for monobromoacetic acid, diiodoacetic acid, chloroiodoacetic acid, bromoiodoacetic acid, tribromoacetic acid, and chlorodibromoacetic acid.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Neoplasm or tissue</th>
<th>DCA</th>
<th>DBA</th>
<th>BCA</th>
<th>TCA</th>
<th>BDCA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rats</td>
<td>Mice</td>
<td>Rats</td>
<td>Mice</td>
<td>Rats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mononuclear-cell leukemia</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignant mesothelioma</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mammary gland</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harderian gland</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large intestine</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DCA = dichloroacetic acid, DBA = dibromoacetic acid, BCA = bromochloroacetic acid, TCA = trichloroacetic acid, BDCA = bromodichloroacetic acid.

8.2 Summary of mechanistic data and read-across approach

Key mechanistic cancer-initiating events are not known for the HAAs but most likely involve multiple biochemical pathways as several potential molecular initiating events have been identified. The selected haloacetic acids may induce cancer through binding to macromolecules, for example, causing oxidative stress through perturbation of energy metabolism within the cell or affecting regulation of genes involved in carcinogenicity.

Haloacetic acids did not form a category to evaluate as a class or a subclass because of lack of a well-defined mechanism or mode(s) of action and lack a clear trend in carcinogenic potency. QSAR model predictions of cancer potency were not consistent with cancer data. Therefore, the current data are inadequate to support considering haloacetic acids as a chemical class or subclass.

8.3 Preliminary listing recommendation

These preliminary listing recommendations are based on applying the RoC listing criteria ([https://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/go/rocprocess](https://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/go/rocprocess)) to the body of scientific evidence provided in this monograph.
Dichloroacetic acid, dibromoacetic acid, chlorobromoacetic acid, and bromodichloroacetic acid are *reasonably anticipated to be human carcinogens* based on *sufficient evidence* from studies in experimental animals and supporting mechanistic data that demonstrate biological plausibility of its carcinogenicity in humans.

- Dichloroacetic acid – liver tumors (male and female mice, male rats)
- Dibromoacetic acid – liver tumors (male and female mice), malignant mesothelioma (male rats), mononuclear-cell leukemia (female rats), lung tumors (male mice)
- Bromochloroacetic acid – liver tumors (male and female mice), malignant mesothelioma (male rats), mammary gland tumors (female rats), large intestinal tumors (male and female rats)
- Bromodichloroacetic acid – liver tumors (male and female mice), Harderian gland tumors (male mice), malignant mesothelioma and skin tumors (male rats), and mammary gland tumors (female rats)

Chlorodibromoacetic acid is *reasonably anticipated to be human carcinogen* based on (1) metabolism studies that provide convincing evidence that chlorodibromoacetic acid is metabolized to bromochloroacetic acid, (2) sufficient evidence for the carcinogenicity of bromochloroacetic acid from studies in experimental animals, and (3) supporting mechanistic data that demonstrate biological plausibility of its carcinogenicity in humans. These mechanisms are biologically plausible in humans.

Tribromoacetic acid is *reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen* based on (1) metabolism studies that provide convincing evidence that tribromoacetic acid is metabolized to dibromoacetic acid, (2) sufficient evidence for the carcinogenicity of dibromoacetic acid from studies in experimental animals, and (3) supporting mechanistic data that demonstrate biological plausibility of its carcinogenicity in humans. These mechanisms are biologically plausible in humans.

Distribution and mechanistic information relating to properties of carcinogens for almost all of the 13 HAAs is available (see Section 6); however, the data are inadequate to group all 13 haloacetic acids as a class or into subclasses based on the type and number of halogens.
References

1. Aasen T, Mesnil M, Naus CC, Lampe PD, Laird DW. 2016. Gap junctions and cancer: communicating for 50 years. *Nat Rev Cancer* 16(12): 775-788. (Supported by the Instituto de Salud Carlos III, the European Regional Development Fund, the Ligue contre le cancer (Comités de Charente, de Charente-maritime, des Deux-Sèvres, du Morbihan et de la Vienne), NIH, the Canadian Institutes of Health Research, the Canadian Cancer Society, and the Canada Research Chairs Program. Authors affiliated with Vall d’Hebron Institute of Research, Spain; Université de Poitiers, France; University of British Columbia, Canada; Fred Hutchinson Cancer Research Center, WA; University of Western Ontario, Canada.)


10. Attene-Ramos MS, Wagner ED, Plewa MJ. 2010. Comparative human cell toxicogenomic analysis of monohaloacetic acid drinking water disinfection byproducts. *Environ Sci Technol* 44(19): 7206-7212. (Supported by the Water Research Foundation, the Center of Advanced Materials for the Purification of Water with Systems and the National Science Foundation Science and Technology Center. Authors affiliated with University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, IL.)


12. Austin EW, Parrish JM, Kinder DH, Bull RJ. 1996. Lipid peroxidation and formation of 8-hydroxydeoxyguanosine from acute doses of halogenated acetic acids. *Fundam Appl Toxicol* 31(1): 77-82. (Supported by NIEHS, the AWWA Research Foundation and the National Water Research Institute. Authors affiliated with Washington State University, WA; Ohio Northern University, OH; Battelle Pacific Northwest National Laboratory, WA.)


20. Blackburn AC, Matthaei KI, Lim C, Taylor MC, Cappello JY, Hayes JD, Anders MW, Board PG. 2006. Deficiency of glutathione transferase zeta causes oxidative stress and activation of antioxidant response pathways. *Mol Pharmacol* 69(2): 650-657. (Supported by the Australian National Health and Medical Research Council and NIEHS. Authors affiliated with Australian National University, Australia; Ninewells Hospital, UK; University of Rochester Medical Center, NY.)


30. Cantor KP, Villanueva CM, Silverman DT, Figueroa JD, Real FX, Garcia-Closas M, Malats N, Chanock S, Yeager M, Tardon A, Garcia-Closas R, Serra C, Carrato A, Castaño-Vinyals G, Samanic C, Rothman N, Kogevinas M. 2010. Polymorphisms in GSTT1, GSTZ1, and CYP2E1, disinfection by-products, and risk of bladder cancer in Spain. *Environ Health Perspect* 118(11): 1545-1550. (Supported by NIH, NCI, the Fondo de Investigación Sanitaria, and the Instituto de Salud Carlos III, Spanish Health Ministry. Authors affiliated with NCI, MD; KP Cantor Environmental LLC, MD; Centre for Research in Environmental Epidemiology, Spain; Institut Municipal d’Investigacio Medica–Hospital del Mar, Spain; CIBER Epidemiologia y Salud Publica, Spain; Centro Nacional de Investigaciones Oncológicas, Spain; Universidad Pompeu Fabra, Spain; Universidad de Oviedo, Spain; Hospital Universitario de Canarias, Spain; Consorci Hospitalari Parc Taulí, Spain; Ramon y Cajal University Hospital, Spain; National School of Public Health, Greece.)


34. Carter JH, Carter HW, Deddens JA, Hurst BM, George MH, DeAngelo AB. 2003. A 2-year dose-response study of lesion sequences during hepatocellular carcinogenesis in the male B6C3F(1) mouse given the drinking water chemical dichloroacetic acid. Environ Health Perspect 111(1): 53-64. (Supported by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Cooperative Agreement and the Wood Hudson Cancer Research Laboratory Memorial Fund. Authors affiliated with Wood Hudson Cancer Research Laboratory, KY; University of Cincinnati, OH; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, NC.)


38. Celik I, Temur A, Isik I. 2009. Hepatoprotective role and antioxidant capacity of pomegranate (Punica granatum) flowers infusion against trichloroacetic acid-exposed in rats. Food and Chemical Toxicology 47(1): 145-149. (Supported by the University Grant Commission of Yuzuncu Yil University. Authors affiliated with Yuzuncu Yil University, Turkey.)

39. Cemeli E, Wagner ED, Anderson D, Richardson SD, Plewa MJ. 2006. Modulation of the cytotoxicity and genotoxicity of the drinking water disinfection byproduct iodoacetic acid by suppressors of oxidative stress. Environ Sci Technol 40(6): 1878-1883. (Supported by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Authors affiliated with University of Bradford, UK; University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, IL; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, GA.)

40. Chang EE, Guo HC, Li IS, Chiang PC, Huang CP. 2010a. Modeling the formation and assessing the risk of disinfection by-products in water distribution systems. J Environ Sci Health A Tox Hazard Subst Environ Eng 45(10): 1185-1194. (Support not reported. Authors affiliated with Taipei Medical University, Taiwan; National Taiwan University, Taiwan; University of Delaware, DE.)

41. Chang HH, Tung HH, Chao CC, Wang GS. 2010b. Occurrence of haloacetic acids (HAAs) and trihalomethanes (THMs) in drinking water of Taiwan. Environ Monit Assess 162(1-4): 237-250. (Supported by Taiwan Water Corporation. Authors affiliated with National Taiwan University, China.)


45. Choi SY, Park OJ. 1996. Differential display analysis of gene expression induced under DCA treatment in rat liver. J Biochem Mol Biol 29(3): 272-275. (Supported by Han Nam University, Korea. Authors affiliated with Han Nam University, Korea.)


47. Colell A, Green DR, Ricci JE. 2009. Novel roles for GAPDH in cell death and carcinogenesis. Cell Death Differ 16(12): 1573-1581. (Supported by l’Association pour la Recherche sur le Cancer, by l’Agence Nationnal de la Recherche, la Fondation de France, Plan Nacional, the U.S. National Institutes of Health, and INSERM-CHU de Nice. Authors affiliated with CIBEREHD, IDIBAPS, Spain; St. Jude Children’s Research Institute, TN; INSERM, France; Université de Nice-Sophia-Antipolis, France; Centre Hospitalier Universitaire de Nice, France.)


50. Corvi R, Aardema MJ, Gribaldo L, Hayashi M, Hoffmann S, Schechtman L, Vanparys P. 2012. ECVAM prevalidation study on in vitro cell transformation assays: general outline and conclusions of the study. Mutat Res 744(1): 12-19. (Supported by the Joint Research Centre of the European Commission through ECVAM, the Japanese Ministry of Health, and Procter & Gamble Corporation. Authors affiliated with European Commission Joint Research Centre, Italy; Marilyn Aardema Consulting, LLC, OH; Biosafety Research Center, Japan; seh consulting + services, Germany; Innovative Toxicology Consulting, LLC, FL; ALTOXICON BVBA, Belgium.)

NC3Rs and the UK Environmental Mutagen Society. Authors affiliated with National Centre for the Replacement, Refinement and Reduction of Animals in Research, UK; Marilyn Aardema Consulting, LLC, OH; Unilever Safety and Environmental Assurance Centre, UK; GlaxoSmithKline plc, UK; Lancaster University, UK; Brunel University, UK; AstraZeneca R&D, UK; Bioreliance Corporation, MD; Harlan Cytotest Cell Research GmbH, Germany; Hatano Research Institute, Japan; Innovative Toxicology Consulting, LLC, FL; Dana Farber Cancer Institute, MD.)


54. Dad A, Jeong CH, Pals JA, Wagner ED, Plewa MJ. 2013. Pyruvate remediation of cell stress and genotoxicity induced by haloacetic acid drinking water disinfection by-products. Environ Mol Mutagen 54(8): 629-637. (Supported by the Center of Advanced Materials for the Purification of Water with Systems, the U.S. EPA, NIEHS and the Institute of Information Technology, Pakistan. Authors affiliated with University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, IL; Comsats Institute of Information Technology, Pakistan.)


64. Dickenson ER, Summers RS, Croué JP, Gallard H. 2008. Haloacetic acid and trihalomethane formation from the chlorination and bromination of aliphatic beta-dicarbonyl acid model compounds. *Environ Sci Technol* 42(9): 3226-3233. (Supported by the EPA, the Laboratoire de Chimie de l’Eau et de l’Environnement of the Ecole Supérieure d’Ingénieurs at the Université de Poitiers, France, and by the University of Colorado’s Chancellor’s Graduate Fellowship program. Authors affiliated with University of Colorado, CO; Université de Poitiers, France.)


66. Duirk SE, Lindell C, Cornelison CC, Kormos J, Ternes TA, Attene-Ramos M, Osiol J, Wagner ED, Plewa MJ, Richardson SD. 2011. Formation of toxic iodinated disinfection by-products from compounds used in medical imaging. *Environ Sci Technol* 45(16): 6845-6854. (Supported by the Center of Advanced Materials for the Purification of Water with Systems, the National Science Foundation Science and Technology Center, a Illinois/Indiana Sea Grant, NSF and DFG. Authors affiliated with U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, GA; Federal Institute of Hydrology, Germany; University of Illinois at Urbana Champaign, IL.)


83. Escobar-Hoyos LF, Hoyos-Giraldo LS, Londoño-Velasco E, Reyes-Carvajal I, Saavedra-Trujillo D, Carvajal-Varona S, Sánchez-Gómez A, Wagner ED, Plewa MJ. 2013. Genotoxic and clastogenic effects of monohaloacetic acid drinking water disinfection by-products in primary human lymphocytes. Water Res 47(10): 3282-3290. (Supported by COLCIENCIAS, the Universidad del Cauca, Colombia the Universidad del Valle, Colombia, the Center of Advanced Materials for the Purification of Water with Systems, National Science Foundation Science and Technology Center and the University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign. Authors affiliated with Universidad del Cauca, Colombia; Stony Brook University, NY; Universidad del Valle, Colombia; University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, IL.)


86. Fang C, Zhu H. 2001. [Malignant transformation experiment of NIH3T3 cells induced by dibromoacetic acid in drinking water]. Zhongguo Huanjing Kexue 21(3): 245-247. (Support unknown due to foreign language. Authors affiliated with Medical College of Fudan University, China.)

87. Fang YY, Kashkarov U, Anders MW, Board PG. 2006. Polymorphisms in the human glutathione transferase zeta promoter. Pharmacogenet Genomics 16(5): 307-313. (Supported by the National Health and Medical Research Council and NIEHS. Authors affiliated with Australian National University, Australia; University of Rochester Medical Center, NY.)


92. Froese KL, Sinclair MI, Hrudey SE. 2002. Trichloroacetic acid as a biomarker of exposure to disinfection by-products in drinking water: a human exposure trial in Adelaide, Australia. *Environ Health Perspect* 110(7): 679-687. (Supported by the Natural Sciences and Engineering Research Council Strategic Grants program. Authors affiliated with University of Alberta, Canada; Monash University Medical School, Australia.)


95. Gao SY, Zhou XR, Gong TT, Jia LM, Li BX. 2016. Dibromoacetic acid induces thymocyte apoptosis by blocking cell cycle progression, increasing intracellular calcium, and the Fas/FasL pathway in vitro. *Toxicol Pathol* 44(1): 88-97. (Supported by the grant from National Natural Science Foundation of China and the Scientific and Technological Innovation in Harbin. Authors affiliated with Harbin Medical University, China; Environmental Monitoring Centre of Heilongjiang Province, China.)


Gwynn RH, Salaman MH. 1953. Studies on co-carcinogenesis. SH-reactors and other substances tested for co-carcinogenic action in mouse skin. *Br J Cancer* 7(4): 482-489. (Supported by the British Empire Cancer Campaign. Authors affiliated with London Hospital Medical College, UK.)


Hassoun E, Cearfoss J. 2014. Do antioxidant enzymes and glutathione play roles in the induction of hepatic oxidative stress in mice upon subchronic exposure to mixtures of dichloroacetate and trichloroacetate? *Toxicol Environ Chem* 96(3): 482-490. (Supported by NIEHS. Authors affiliated with University of Toledo, OH.)


110. Hassoun EA, Dey S. 2008. Dichloroacetate- and trichloroacetate-induced phagocytic activation and production of oxidative stress in the hepatic tissues of mice after acute exposure. *Journal of Biochemical and Molecular Toxicology* 22(1): 27-34. (Supported by the University of Toledo deArce Memorial Endowment Fund. Authors affiliated with University of Toledo, OH.)

111. Hassoun EA, Cearfoss J, Spildener J. 2010a. Dichloroacetate- and trichloroacetate-induced oxidative stress in the hepatic tissues of mice after long-term exposure. *J Appl Toxicol* 30(5): 450-456. (Supported by NIEHS. Authors affiliated with University of Toledo, OH.)


120. Hladik ML, Focazio MJ, Engle M. 2014. Discharges of produced waters from oil and gas extraction via wastewater treatment plants are sources of disinfection by-products to receiving streams. *Sci Total Environ* 466-467: 1085-1093. (Supported by the USGS Toxic Substances Hydrology Program. Authors affiliated with U.S. Geological Survey, CA and VA; University of Texas at El Paso, TX.)


bin/sis/htmlgen?HSDB and search on CAS number or compound name. Accessed on 12/21/15.

127. Hsu CC, Lee HC, Wei YH. 2013. Mitochondrial DNA alterations and mitochondrial dysfunction in the progression of hepatocellular carcinoma. World J Gastroenterol 19(47): 8880-8886. (Supported by the Ministry of Health and Welfare of the Executive Yuan, the Ministry of Education, and the National Science Council of Taiwan. Authors affiliated with National Yang-Ming University, Taiwan; Mackay Medical College, Taiwan.)


141. Jones RR, Weyer PJ, DellaValle CT, Robein K, Cantor KP, Krasner S, Beane Freeman LE, Ward MH. 2017. Ingested nitrate, disinfection by-products, and kidney cancer risk in older women. Epidemiology In press: 26 (Supported by NIH and NCI. Authors affiliated with NIH, MD; University of Iowa, IA; George Washington University, Washington DC; Metropolitan Water District of Southern California, CA.)


143. Kaphalia BS, Bhat HK, Khan MF, Ansari GA. 1992. Tissue distribution of monochloroacetic acid and its binding to albumin in rats. Toxicol Ind Health 8(1-2): 53-61. (Supported by NIOSH. Authors affiliated with University of Texas Medical Branch, TX.)


146. Khanna KK, Jackson SP. 2001. DNA double-strand breaks: signaling, repair and the cancer connection. *Nat Genet* 27(3): 247-254. (Supported by the National Health and Medical Research Council, the Queensland Cancer Fund, the Susan G. Komen Breast Cancer Foundation, the Cancer Research Campaign, the Association for International Cancer Research and the A-T Medical Research Trust. Authors affiliated with University of Queensland, Australia; University of Cambridge, UK.)


148. Kim H, Weisel CP. 1998. Dermal absorption of dichloro- and trichloroacetic acids from chlorinated water. *J Exp Anal Environ Epidem* 8(4): 555-575. (Supported by the New Jersey Department of Health and Senior Services, the Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry, the US EPA and NIEHS. Authors affiliated with State University of New Jersey, NJ; University of Medicine and Dentistry of New Jersey, NJ; Kangwon National University, Korea.)


151. Kim S, Collins LB, Boysen G, Swenberg JA, Gold A, Ball LM, Bradford BU, Rusyn I. 2009. Liquid chromatography electrospray ionization tandem mass spectrometry analysis method for simultaneous detection of trichloroacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid, S-(1,2-dichlorovinyl)glutathione and S-(1,2-dichlorovinyl)-L-cysteine. *Toxicology* 262(3): 230-238. (Supported by NIEHS. Authors affiliated with University of North Carolina, NC; Seoul National University, Korea; University of Arkansas for Medical Science, AR.)


153. King WD, Dodds L, Armson BA, Allen AC, Fell DB, Nimrod C. 2004. Exposure assessment in epidemiologic studies of adverse pregnancy outcomes and disinfection byproducts. *J Expo Anal Environ Epidemiol* 14(6): 466-472. (Supported by the Toxic Substance Research Initiative, Health Canada, Environment Canada, Canadian Chlorine Coordinating Committee, and Dalhousie University. Authors affiliated with Queen’s University, Canada; Dalhousie University, Canada; Ottawa University, Canada.)


160. Krishna S, Supanaranond W, Pukrittayakamee S, Karter D, Supputamongkol Y, Davis TM, Holloway PA, White NJ. 1994. Dichloroacetate for lactic acidosis in severe malaria: a pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic assessment. *Metabolism* 43(8): 974-981. (Supported by the Wellcome Trust of Great Britain. Authors affiliated with Mahidol University, Thailand; John Radcliffe Hospital, UK; St. Vincent's Hospital, NY; Fremantle Hospital, Australia; St. George's Hospital Medical School, UK.)

Teaching Hospital, Ghana; Mahidol University, Thailand; University of Florida, FL; University of Liverpool, UK.)

162. Krishna S, Supanaranond W, Pukrittayakamee S, Kuile FT, Ruprah M, White NJ. 1996. The disposition and effects of two doses of dichloroacetate in adults with severe falciparum malaria. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 41(1): 29-34. (Supported by the Wellcome Trust of Great Britain. Authors affiliated with Mahidol University, Thailand; John Radcliffe Hospital, UK; St George's Hospital Medical School, UK; University of Amsterdam, Netherlands; Poisons Unit, UK.)


166. Lan J, Gou N, Rahman SM, Gao C, He M, Gu AZ. 2016. A quantitative toxicogenomics assay for high-throughput and mechanistic genotoxicity assessment and screening of environmental pollutants. *Environ Sci Technol* 50(6): 3202-3214. (Supported by the National Science Foundation, PROTECT, and CRECE. Authors affiliated with Northeastern University, MA; Tsinghua University, China.)


Health Research, NC; Experimental Pathology Laboratories Inc., NC; ToxicoGenomics, NC.)


172. Li W, Gu Y, James MO, Hines RN, Simpson P, Langaee T, Staecoole PW. 2012. Prenatal and postnatal expression of glutathione transferase zeta 1 in human liver and the roles of haplotype and subject age in determining activity with dichloroacetate. Drug Metab Dispos 40(2): 232-239. (Supported by NIH and NIEHS. Authors affiliated with University of Florida, FL; Medical College of Wisconsin, WI; Children’s Hospital and Health Systems, WI.)


175. Liviac D, Creus A, Marcos R. 2010. Genotoxicity testing of three monohaloacetic acids in TK6 cells using the cytokinesis-block micronucleus assay. Mutagenesis 25(5): 505-509. (Supported by the Universitat Autònoma de Barcelona, the Spanish Ministries of Education and Science, the Environment and Rural and Marine Affairs and the Generalitat de Catalunya. Authors affiliated with Universitat Autònoma de Barcelona, Spain; Instituto de Salud Carlos III, Spain.)


179. Lumpkin MH, Bruckner JV, Campbell JL, Dallas CE, White CA, Fisher JW. 2003. Plasma binding of trichloroacetic acid in mice, rats, and humans under cancer bioassay and environmental exposure conditions. Drug Metab Dispos 31(10): 1203-1207. (Supported by the United States Department of Energy Cooperative Agreement and by the University of Georgia Interdisciplinary Program in Toxicology. Authors affiliated with Clayton Group Services, Inc., GA; University of Georgia, GA.)


183. Mather GG, Exon JH, Koller LD. 1990. Subchronic 90 day toxicity of dichloroacetic and trichloroacetic acid in rats. Toxicology 64(1): 71-80. (Supported by the EPA. Authors affiliated with University of Idaho, ID; Oregon State University, OR.)


188. Merdink JL, Bull RJ, Schultz IR. 2000. Trapping and identification of the dichloroacetate radical from the reductive dehalogenation of trichloroacetate by mouse and rat liver
microsomes. Free Radic Biol Med 29(2): 125-130. (Supported by the U.S. Dept. of Energy and the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Authors affiliated with Washington State University, WA; Pacific Northwest National Laboratory, WA.)


199. NTP. 2015. *Toxicology Studies of Bromodichloroacetic Acid (CAS No. 71133-14-7) in F344/N Rats and B6C3F1/N Mice and Toxicology and Carcinogenesis Studies of Bromodichloroacetic Acid in F344/Ntac Rats and B6C3F1/N Mice (Drinking Water Studies).* NTP TR 583. Research Triangle Park, NC: National Toxicology Program. 264 pp.


202. Ohashi T, Akazawa T, Aoki M, Kuze B, Mizuta K, Ito Y, Inoue N. 2013. Dichloroacetate improves immune dysfunction caused by tumor-secreted lactic acid and increases antitumor immunoreactivity. *Int J Cancer* 133(5): 1107-1118. (Supported by the Japan Society for the Promotion of Science and the Ministry of Health, Labour and Welfare of Japan. Authors affiliated with Osaka Medical Center for Cancer and Cardiovascular Diseases, Japan; Gifu University Graduate School of Medicine, Japan.)

203. Ondricek AJ, Kashyap AK, Thamake SI, Vishwanatha JK. 2012. A comparative study of phytoestrogen action in mitigating apoptosis induced by oxidative stress. *In Vivo* 26(5): 765-775. (Support not reported. Authors affiliated with University of North Texas Health Science Center, TX; UT Southwestern Medical School, TX.)


205. Pals J, Attene-Ramos MS, Xia M, Wagner ED, Plewa MJ. 2013. Human cell toxicogenomic analysis linking reactive oxygen species to the toxicity of monohaloacetic acid drinking water disinfection byproducts. *Environ Sci Technol* 47(21): 12514-12523. (Supported by the Center of Advanced Materials for the Purification of Water with Systems (Water-CAMPWS), a National Science Foundation Science and Technology Center Award and NIEHS. Authors affiliated with University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, IL; NIH, MD.)

206. Pals JA, Ang JK, Wagner ED, Plewa MJ. 2011. Biological mechanism for the toxicity of haloacetic acid drinking water disinfection byproducts. *Environ Sci Technol* 45(13): 5791-5797. (Supported by the Center of Advanced Materials for the Purification of Water with Systems (WaterCAMPWS), a National Science Foundation Science and Technology...
Center Award, a Turner Graduate Fellowship from the College of Agricultural, Consumer and Environmental Sciences and a James Scholarship from the University of Illinois. Authors affiliated with University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, IL.)


208. Pan Y, Wei X, Hao W. 2015. Trichloroethylene and its oxidative metabolites enhance the activated state and Th1 cytokine gene expression in jurkat cells. *Int J Environ Res Public Health* 12(9): 10575-10586. (Supported by the National Sciences Foundations of the People’s Republic of China. Authors affiliated with Peking University, China; Beijing Key Laboratory of Toxicological Research and Risk Assessment for Food Safety, China.)

209. Pan Y, Zhang X, Li Y. 2016. Identification, toxicity and control of iodinated disinfection byproducts in cooking with simulated chlor(am)inated tap water and iodized table salt. *Water Res* 88: 60-68. (Supported by the Research Grants Council of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, China, The National Natural Science Foundation of China, and the Natural Science Foundation of Jiangsu Province, China. Authors affiliated with Hong Kong University of Science and Technology, China; Nanjing University, China.)


211. Parrish JM, Austin EW, Stevens DK, Kinder DH, Bull RJ. 1996. Haloacetate-induced oxidative damage to DNA in the liver of male B6C3F1 mice. *Toxicology* 110(1-3): 103-111. (Supported by the AWWA Research Foundation, the National Water Research Institute and NIEHS. Authors affiliated with Washington State University, WA; Ohio Northern University, OH; Battelie Pacific Northwest National Laboratories, WA.)


218. Pereira MA, Kramer PM, Conran PB, Tao L. 2001. Effect of chloroform on dichloroacetic acid and trichloroacetic acid-induced hypomethylation and expression of the c-myc gene and on their promotion of liver and kidney tumors in mice. *Carcinogenesis* 22(9): 1511-1519. (Supported by the US EPA. Authors affiliated with Medical College of Ohio, OH.)

219. Pereira MA, Wang W, Kramer PM, Tao LH. 2004a. DNA hypomethylation induced by non-genotoxic carcinogens in mouse and rat colon. *Cancer Lett* 212(2): 145-151. (Supported by the US Environmental Protection Agency and NIEHS. Authors affiliated with Medical College of Ohio, OH.)


221. Pérez-Garrido A, González MP, Escudero AG. 2008. Halogenated derivatives QSAR model using spectral moments to predict haloacetic acids (HAA) mutagenicity. *Bioorg Med Chem* 16(10): 5720-5732. (Support not reported. Authors affiliated with Catholic University of San Antonio, Spain; Central University of Las Villas, Cuba; Vigo University, Spain.)

222. Plewa MJ, Cemeli E, Anderson D, Wagner E. 2004a. The genotoxicity of the drinking water disinfection by-product iodoacetic acid is reduced by modulators of oxidative stress. *Environ Mol Mutagen* 44(3): 220. (Support not reported. Authors affiliated with University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, IL; University of Bradford, UK.)

223. Plewa MJ, Wagner ED, Richardson SD, Thruston AD, Jr., Woo YT, McKague AB. 2004b. Chemical and biological characterization of newly discovered iodoacid drinking water disinfection byproducts. *Environ Sci Technol* 38(18): 4713-4722. (Supported by the US EPA. Authors affiliated with University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, IL; U.S.
Environmental Protection Agency, GA and Washington, DC; CanSyn Chemical Corporation, Canada.)

224. Plewa MJ, Simmons JE, Richardson SD, Wagner ED. 2010. Mammalian cell cytotoxicity and genotoxicity of the haloacetic acids, a major class of drinking water disinfection by-products. *Environ Mol Mutagen* 51(8-9): 871-878. (Supported by the US EPA, USDA, the Water Research Foundation, the Center of Advanced Materials for the Purification of Water with Systems and the National Science Foundation Science and Technology Center. Authors affiliated with University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, IL; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, NC and GA.)


226. Procházka E, Escher BI, Plewa MJ, Leusch FD. 2015. In vitro cytotoxicity and adaptive stress responses to selected haloacetic acid and halobenzoquinone water disinfection byproducts. *Chem Res Toxicol* 28(10): 2059-2068. (Supported by Griffith University. Authors affiliated with Griffith University, Australia; Helmholtz Centre for Environmental Research, Germany; Eberhard Karls University Tübingen, Germany; University of Illinois at Urbana–Champaign, IL.)


WPet al, eds., eds. Chelsea, MI: Lewis Publishers, Inc. p. 1229-1257. (Supported by the USEPA. Author affiliations not reported.)


235. Regli S, Chen J, Messner M, Elovitz MS, Letkiewicz FJ, Pegram RA, Pepping TJ, Richardson SD, Wright JM. 2015. Estimating potential increased bladder cancer risk due to increased bromide concentrations in sources of disinfected drinking waters. *Environ Sci Technol* 49(22): 13094-13102. (Supported in part by an appointment to the Research Participation Program at the Office of Water administered by the Oak Ridge Institute for Science and Education through an interagency agreement between the Department of Energy and EPA. Authors affiliated with U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C., NC, and OH; Cadmus Group, MD; U.S. Department of Energy, TN; University of South Carolina, SC.)


240. Richmond RE, De Angelo AB, Potter CL, Daniel FB. 1991. The role of hyperplastic
nodules in dichloroacetic acid-induced hepatocarcinogenesis in B6C3F1 male mice. 
Carcinogenesis 12(8): 1383-1387. (Supported by the US EPA. Authors affiliated with
Northern Kentucky University, KY; US Environmental Protection Agency, OH.)

Immunohistochemical analysis of dichloroacetic acid (DCA)-induced hepatocarcinogenesis
in male Fischer (F344) rats. Cancer Lett 92(1): 67-76. (Supported by the US EPA. Authors
affiliated with Northern Kentucky University, KY; Wood Hudson Cancer Research
Laboratory, KY; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, OH and NC.)

concentrations using ICR data. J AWWA 94(1): 103-114. (Supported by the AWWA
Research Foundation. Authors affiliated with University of North Carolina, NC;
Philadelphia Water Department, PA.)

243. Roccaro P, Vagliasindi FGA, Korshin GV. 2014. Relationships between trihalomethanes,
haloacetic acids, and haloacetonitriles formed by the chlorination of raw, treated, and
fractionated surface waters. J Water Supply Res Technol 63(1): 21-30. (Supported by the
USEPA, the Italian Ministry of Instruction, University, and Research, and the US-Italy
Fulbright Commission. Authors affiliated with University of Catania, Italy; University of
Washington, WA.)

products in drinking water according to source, treatment, season, and distribution location.
J Environ Eng Sci 6: 355-365. (Supported by the National Science and Engineering
Research Council. Authors affiliated with Université Laval, Canada; Institut National de
Santé Publique du Québec, Canada; Service de l’environnement, Canada.)

Pathol 16(2): 115-116. (Support not reported. Author affiliated with Alaska Regional
Hospital, AK.)


rats after intravenous injection of a subtoxic and a toxic dose. J Pharmacol Exp Ther
296(2): 612-622. (Support not reported. Authors affiliated with University of Kansas
Medical Center, KS; GSF-Institut für Toxikologie, Germany; Battelle, WA.)

248. Saghir SA, Schultz IR. 2002. Low-dose pharmacokinetics and oral bioavailability of
dichloroacetate in naive and GST-ζ-depleted rats. Environ Health Perspect 110(8): 757-
763. (Supported by the US EPA. Authors affiliated with Battelle Pacific Northwest
National Laboratory, WA.)


251. Saghir SA, Ghanayem BI, Schultz IR. 2011. Kinetics of trihalogenated acetic acid metabolism and isoform specificity in liver microsomes. *Int J Toxicol* 30(5): 551-561. (Supported by the US EPA. Authors affiliated with Dow Chemical Company, MI; Aga Khan University, Pakistan; NIEHS, NC; Pacific Northwest National Laboratory, WA.)


259. Schultz TW, Amcoff P, Berggren E, Gautier F, Klaric M, Knight DJ, Mahony C, Schwarz M, White A, Cronin MT. 2015. A strategy for structuring and reporting a read-across prediction of toxicity. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol* 72(3): 586-601. (Supported by Cosmetics Europe, the Personal Care Association, the COSMOS Project which is funded by the European Community’s Seventh Framework Programme, and the European Cosmetics Association. Authors affiliated with University of Tennessee, TN; Cosmetics Europe, Belgium; European Commission, Italy; L’Oréal, France; ECHA, Finland; Procter & Gamble, UK; Eberhard Karls University of Tübingen, Germany; Unilever PLC, UK; Liverpool John Moores University, UK.)


263. Shroads AL, Coats BS, McDonough CW, Langaee T, Stacpoole PW. 2015. Haplotype variations in glutathione transferase zeta 1 influence the kinetics and dynamics of chronic dichloroacetate in children. *J Clin Pharmacol* 55(1): 50-55. (Supported by the Muscular Dystrophy Association, the Orphan Products Division of the Food and Drug Administration, and NIH. Authors affiliated with University of Florida, FL.)

264. Si EC, Pfeifer RW, Yim GK. 1987. Iodoacetic acid and related sulfhydryl reagents fail to inhibit cell-cell communication: mechanisms of immunotoxicity in vitro. *Toxicology* 44(1): 73-89. (Supported by NIH, the Elsa U. Pardee Foundation, the American Cancer Society, and the Pharmaceutical Manufacturers Association Foundation. Authors affiliated with Purdue University, IN.)


266. Smith EM, Plewa MJ, Lindell CL, Richardson SD, Mitch WA. 2010b. Comparison of byproduct formation in waters treated with chlorine and iodine: relevance to point-of-use

268. Smith MT, Guyton KZ, Gibbons CF, Fritz JM, Portier CJ, Rusyn I, DeMarini DM, Caldwell JC, Kavlock RJ, Lambert P, Hecht SS, Bucher JR, Stewart BW, Baan R, Cogliano VJ, Straif K. 2016. Key characteristics of carcinogens as a basis for organizing data on mechanisms of carcinogenesis. *Environ Health Perspect* 124(6): 713-721. (Supported by NIH and NIEHS. Authors affiliated with University of California Berkeley, CA; IARC, France; EPA, Washington, D.C. and NC; Environmental Defense Fund, Washington, D.C.; Texas A&M University, TX; University of Wisconsin School of Medicine and Public Health, WI; University of Minnesota, MN; NIEHS, NC; University of New South Wales, Australia.)


274. Stalter D, O'Malley E, Von Gunten U, Escher BI. 2016a. Point-of-use water filters can effectively remove disinfection by-products and toxicity from chlorinated and chloraminated tap water. *Environ Sci Water Res Tech* 2: 875-883. (Supported by a Marie Curie International Outgoing Fellowship within the 7th European Community Framework Program, by Seqwater, and by the Australian Research Council. Authors affiliated with University of Queensland, Australia; Swiss Federal Institute of Aquatic Science and
Technology, Switzerland; EPFL, Switzerland; UFZ – Helmholtz Centre for Environmental Research, Germany; Eberhard Karls University, Germany.)

275. Stalter D, O’Malley E, von Gunten U, Escher BI. 2016b. Fingerprinting the reactive toxicity pathways of 50 drinking water disinfection by-products. *Water Res* 91: 19-30. (Supported by a Marie Curie International Outgoing Fellowship within the 7th European Community Framework Program and the Australian Research Council. Authors affiliated with University of Queensland, Australia; Swiss Federal Institute of Aquatic Science and Technology, Switzerland; Ecole Polytechnique Fédérale de Lausanne, Switzerland; UFZ e Helmholtz Centre for Environmental Research, Germany; Eberhard Karls University, Germany.)


284. Tao L, Wang W, Li L, Kramer PM, Pereira MA. 2004a. Effect of dibromoacetic acid on DNA methylation, glycogen accumulation, and peroxisome proliferation in mouse and rat liver. *Toxicol Sci* 82(1): 62-69. (Supported by the US EPA, NIH and NIEHS. Authors affiliated with Medical College of Ohio, OH.)


286. Tao L, Wang W, Li L, Kramer PK, Pereira MA. 2005. DNA hypomethylation induced by drinking water disinfection by-products in mouse and rat kidney. *Toxicol Sci* 87(2): 344-352. (Supported by the US EPA, NIH and NIEHS. Authors affiliated with Ohio State University, OH; Medical College of Ohio, OH.)

287. Tao LH, Kramer PM, Ge RG, Pereira MA. 1998. Effect of dichloroacetic acid and trichloroacetic acid on DNA methylation in liver and tumors of female B6C3F1 mice. *Toxicol Sci* 43(2): 139-144. (Supported by the US EPA. Authors affiliated with Medical College of Ohio, OH.)

288. Teixidó E, Piqué E, Gonzalez-Linares J, Llobet JM, Gómez-Catalán J. 2015. Developmental effects and genotoxicity of 10 water disinfection by-products in zebrafish. *J Water Health* 13(1): 54-66. (Support not reported. Authors affiliated with University of Barcelona, Spain; GRET-CERETOX and Experimental Toxicology and Ecotoxicology Unit, Spain.)


Authors affiliated with University of New South Wales, Australia; University of Ulster, UK.)


299. Tzeng HF, Blackburn AC, Board PG, Anders MW. 2000. Polymorphism- and species-dependent inactivation of glutathione transferase zeta by dichloroacetate. *Chem Res Toxicol* 13(4): 231-236. (Supported by NIEHS. Authors affiliated with University of Rochester Medical Center, NY; Australian National University, Australia; National Taiwan University, Taiwan; University of Massachusetts, MA.)


by the Council of Scientific and Industrial Research. Authors affiliated with Indian Institute of Toxicology Research (IITR), India; Chhatrapati Shahuji Maharaj Medical University, India; All India Institute of Medical Science, India.)

302. Varshney M, Chandra A, Chauhan LKS, Goel SK. 2014. In vitro cytogenetic assessment of trichloroacetic acid in human peripheral blood lymphocytes. *Environ Sci Pollut Res* 21(2): 843-850. (Supported by the Council of Scientific and Industrial Research. Authors affiliated with Indian Institute of Toxicology Research (IITR), India; Chhatrapati Shahuji Maharaj Medical University, India; All India Institute of Medical Science, India.)

303. Villanueva CM, Fernández F, Malats N, Grimalt JO, Kogevinas M. 2003a. Meta-analysis of studies on individual consumption of chlorinated drinking water and bladder cancer. *J Epidemiol Community Health* 57(3): 166-173. (Supported by the Government of Catalonia, CIRIT, FIS, and DG SANCO. Authors affiliated with IMIM, Spain; Universitat Autònoma de Barcelona, Spain; CSIC, Spain.)


305. Villanueva CM, Gracia-Lavedan E, Bosetti C, Righi E, Molina AJ, Martin V, Boldo E, Aragonés N, Perez-Gomez B, Pollan M, Gomez Acebo I, Altzibar JM, Jiménez Zubala A, Ardanaz E, Peiró R, Tardón A, Chirlaque MD, Tavani A, Polesel J, Serraino D, Pisa F, Castano-Vinyals G, Espinosa A, Espejo-Herrera N, Palau M, Moreno V, La Vecchia C, Agazzotti G, Nieuwenhuijsen MJ, Kogevinas M. 2017. Colorectal cancer and long-term exposure to trihalomethanes in drinking water: A multicenter case-control study in Spain and Italy. *Environ Health Perspect* 125(1): 56-65. (Supported by the Acción Transversal del Cáncer del Consejo de Ministros del 11/10/2007, from the Instituto de Salud Carlos III-FEDER, FIS, the Hiwate EU project, and the Italian Foundation for Research on Cancer. Authors affiliated with CREAL, Spain; IMIM, Spain; Universitat Pompeu Fabra, Spain; CIBERESP, Spain; Istituto di Ricerche Farmacologiche Mario Negri, Italy; University of Modena and Reggio Emilia, Italy; University of León, Spain; IIS Puerta De Hierro, Spain; University of Cantabria, Spain; IDIVAL, Spain; Biodonostia Research Institute, Spain; Instituto de Salud Pública y Laboral de Navarra, Spain; Centre for Research in Public Health, Spain; Universidad de Oviedo, Spain; Murcia Regional Health Council, Spain; IRCCS, Spain; Azienda Ospedaliera Universitaria, Italy; Ministry of Health, Social Services and Equity, Spain; IDIBELL, Spain; University of Barcelona, Spain; Università degli Studi di Milano, Italy.)


309. Walgren JL, Jollow DJ, McMillan JM. 2004. Induction of peroxisome proliferation in cultured hepatocytes by a series of halogenated acetates. *Toxicology* 197(3): 189-197. (Supported by the DOE. Authors affiliated with Medical University of South Carolina.)


311. Wang S, Zheng W, Liu X, Xue P, Jiang S, Lu D, Zhang Q, He G, Pi J, Andersen ME, Tan H, Qu W. 2014. Iodoacetic acid activates Nrf2-mediated antioxidant response in vitro and in vivo. *Environ Sci Technol* 48(22): 13478-13488. (Supported by the National High-Tech R&D 863 Program of China, the National Natural Science Foundation of China, the National Key Technology R&D Program in the 12th Five Year Plan, and the Nonprofit Foundation of National Health Ministry in the 12th Five Year Plan. Authors affiliated with Fudan University, China; China Medical University, China; Hamner Institutes for Health Sciences, N.)


324. Zhang SH, Miao DY, Tan L, Liu AL, Lu WQ. 2016. Comparative cytotoxic and genotoxic potential of 13 drinking water disinfection by-products using a microplate-based cytotoxicity assay and a developed SOS/umu assay. *Mutagenesis* 31(1): 35-41. (Supported by the National High Technology Research and Development Program of China, the National Key Technologies R&D Program of China, and the and Science and Technology Planning Project of Hebei Province, China. Authors affiliated with Huazhong University of Science and Technology, China; Third Hospital of Hebei Medical University, China.)


327. Zhang YQ, Wu QP, Zhang JM, Yang XH. 2015b. Removal of bromide and bromate from drinking water using granular activated carbon. *J Water Health* 13(1): 73-78. (Supported by the Guangdong Provincial Strategic Emerging Industry Core Technology Research Project. Authors affiliated with State Key Laboratory of Applied Microbiology, China; Xuchang University, China.)
## Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1H NMR:</td>
<td>proton nuclear magnetic resonance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-OHdG:</td>
<td>8-hydroxydeoxyguanosine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACGIH:</td>
<td>American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADD:</td>
<td>average daily dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADME:</td>
<td>absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AEGL:</td>
<td>Acute Exposure Guideline Level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AhR:</td>
<td>aryl hydrocarbon receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL:</td>
<td>acute lymphocytic leukemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALT:</td>
<td>serum alanine aminotransferase, alanine aminotransferase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANOVA:</td>
<td>analysis of variance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AOP:</td>
<td>adverse outcome pathway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARE:</td>
<td>antioxidant response element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARNT:</td>
<td>aryl hydrocarbon nuclear translocator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AST:</td>
<td>serum aspartate aminotransferase, aspartate aminotransferase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atm:</td>
<td>atmosphere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATSDR:</td>
<td>Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWWA:</td>
<td>American Water Works Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCA:</td>
<td>bromochloroacetic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BDCA:</td>
<td>bromodichloroacetic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BDL:</td>
<td>below detection limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIA:</td>
<td>bromoiodoacetic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMD:</td>
<td>benchmark dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMDL:</td>
<td>benchmark dose low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA:</td>
<td>chromosomal aberration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CASRN:</td>
<td>Chemical Abstracts Service registry number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDBA:</td>
<td>chlorodibromoacetic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDC:</td>
<td>Centers for Disease Control and Prevention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDR:</td>
<td>Chemical Data Reporting Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEBS:</td>
<td>Chemical Effects in Biological Systems database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CERHR:</td>
<td>Center for the Evaluation of Risks to Human Reproduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHO:</td>
<td>Chinese hamster ovary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CIA: chloriiodoacetic acid  
CIN: chromosomal instability  
\(cm^2\): centimeters squared  
CO\(_2\): carbon dioxide  
CT: chlorine concentration (C) times contact time (T)  
Cx: connexin  
\(\text{Cx32}\): gap junction beta 1-protein; connexin32  
DBA: dibromoacetic acid  
DBP: disinfection by-product  
DBPR: Disinfectants and Disinfection Byproducts Rule  
DCA: dichloroacetic acid  
DIA: diiodoacetic acid  
DLMI: dominant lethal mutation index  
DLMR: dominant lethal mutation rate  
DNA: deoxyribonucleic acid  
dw: drinking water  
EASE: Estimation and Assessment of Substance Exposure  
EC\(_{50}\): concentration of a drug that gives a half-maximal response  
\(E_{\text{HOMO}}\): energy of the highest occupied molecular orbital  
\(E_{\text{LUMO}}\): energy of the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital  
EPA, USEPA: Environmental Protection Agency, United States Environmental Protection Agency  
EQ: exposure quartiles model  
Erk MAPK: extracellular signal-regulated kinase mitogen activated pathway  
EUSES: European Union System for the Evaluation of Substances  
EWG: Environmental Working Group  
Exp.: exposed  
F: female  
FDA: Food and Drug Administration  
FLARE: fragment length analysis with repair enzyme  
FR: Federal Register  
ft: feet  
FTE: full-time equivalent
FU: follow-up
G: guanine
GAC: Genetic Alterations in Cancer
GC/MS: gas chromatography/mass spectroscopy
GFR: glomerular filtration rate
GI: gastrointestinal
GIS: Geographic Information System
GM: geometric mean
GSH: glutathione
GSSH: oxidized glutathione
GST: glutathione-S-transferase
GST-ζ: glutathione-S-transferase zeta
HAA: haloacetic acid
HAA5: sum of five haloacetic acids (bromoacetic acid, dibromoacetic acid, chloroacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid, and trichloroacetic acid)
HAA9: sum of nine haloacetic acids (bromoacetic acid, dibromoacetic acid, chloroacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid, and trichloroacetic acid, bromochloroacetic acid, bromodichloroacetic acid, dibromochloroacetic acid, and tribromoacetic acid)
Hb: hemoglobin
HBV: Hepatitis B virus
HCB: hexachlorobenzene
HCL: hairy-cell leukemia
HCV: Hepatitis C virus
HETA: Health Hazard Evaluation and Technical Assistance
HGPRT: hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase
HHE: Health Hazard Evaluation
HHS: Department of Health and Human Services
HIC: highest ineffective concentration
HID: highest ineffective dose
HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus
HOBr: hypobromous acid
HOCl: hypochlorous acid
HOI: hypoiodous acid
HPLC: high-performance liquid chromatography
hr: hour
HWE: healthy worker (hire or survival) effect
I: inconclusive
i.p.: intraperitoneal
i.v.: intravenous
IARC: International Agency for Research on Cancer
ICD-9: International Classification of Diseases, Ninth Revision
ICD-O-2: International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (revision 2)
IDLH: immediately dangerous to life and health
in: inch
IOM: Institute of Medicine
IRIS: Integrated Risk Information System
IUR: Inventory Update Rule
JEM: job-exposure matrix
kg: kilogram
L: liter
LEC: lowest effective concentration
LED: lowest effective dose
LHC: lymphohematopoietic cancer
LOD: limit of detection
Log D: logarithm of the n-octanol-buffer solution (pH 7.4 or 4.0) distribution coefficient
Log K_{ow}, logP: logarithm of octanol/water partition coefficient
LOH: loss of heterozygosity
M: male
m³: cubic meter
MAAI: maleylacetoacetate isomerase
MAPK: mitogen activated protein kinases
MBA: monobromoacetic acid
MCA: monochloroacetic acid
MCL: maximum contaminant level
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCE</td>
<td>sister-chromatid exchange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCGE</td>
<td>single cell gel electrophoresis (Comet assay)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td>standard deviation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDWA</td>
<td>Safe Drinking Water Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIC</td>
<td>Standard Industrial Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sig</td>
<td>statistically significant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIR</td>
<td>standardized incidence ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMR</td>
<td>standardized mortality ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S_{N2}</td>
<td>substitution, nucleophilic, with 2 molecules in the rate-determining step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOCEMI</td>
<td>synthetic organic chemical manufacturing industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRR</td>
<td>standardized rate ratio, standardized relative risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSB</td>
<td>single strand break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS</td>
<td>soft tissue sarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBA</td>
<td>tribromoacetic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBARS</td>
<td>thiobarbituric acid-reactive substances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCA</td>
<td>trichloroacetic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TD_{50s}</td>
<td>chronic dose rate that would induce tumors in half the animals tested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TDS</td>
<td>Total Diet Study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THAAAs</td>
<td>total haloacetic acids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TL</td>
<td>tail length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLC</td>
<td>thin-layer chromatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLV-TWA</td>
<td>threshold limit value time-weighted average</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TM</td>
<td>tail moment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t_{max}</td>
<td>time to maximum concentration in plasma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TMD</td>
<td>tail moment dispersion coefficient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRI</td>
<td>Toxics Release Inventory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSCA</td>
<td>Toxic Substances Control Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSFE</td>
<td>time since first employment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTHM</td>
<td>total trihalomethanes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCMR4</td>
<td>Fourth Unregulated Contaminant Monitoring Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDS</td>
<td>unscheduled DNA synthesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UK</td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V_D</td>
<td>apparent volume of distribution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>volatile organic compound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WBC</td>
<td>white blood cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHO</td>
<td>World Health Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wt%</td>
<td>weight percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yr</td>
<td>year or years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>µg</td>
<td>microgram</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Glossary

Alkylating potential: The likelihood that a hydrogen will be replace by an alkyl group, especially in a biologically important molecule.

Ames assay: The Ames Salmonella/microsome mutagenicity assay is a short-term bacterial reverse mutation assay specifically designed to detect a wide range of chemical substances that can produce genetic damage that leads to gene mutations.

Amniotic fluid: The protective fluid surrounding the developing fetus within the amniotic sac of a pregnant female.

Aneuploidy: An abnormality involving a chromosome number that is not an exact multiple of the haploid number (one chromosome set is incomplete).

Apoptosis: Cell deletion by fragmentation into membrane-bound particles, which are phagocytosed by other cells.

Apurinic site: A location in DNA (also in RNA but much less likely) that has neither a purine nor a pyrimidine base, either spontaneously or due to DNA damage.

Arabinose resistance: The L-arabinose resistance test with Salmonella typhimurium (Ara test) is a forward mutation assay that selects a single phenotypic change (from L-arabinose sensitivity to L-arabinose resistance) in a unique tester strain (an araD mutant).

ARE-bla: Activation of oxidative stress response pathway in human hepatocellular carcinoma HepG2 cell line.

AREc32: Activation of Nrf2-ARE oxidative stress response pathway in a human breast cancer cell line MCF7.

Aroclor 1254-induced liver: Liver tissue treated with the polychlorinated biphenyl mixture Aroclor 1254 used as a source of S9 fraction for mutagenic and genotoxic effects testing.

Atomic size: The size of an atom measured as the atomic radius or the mean distance from the center of the nucleus to the outer boundary of the electron cloud.

Attrition bias: Systematic differences between comparison groups in withdrawals or exclusions of participants from the results of a study.

Basal-cell adenoma: A benign tumor of major or minor salivary glands or other organs composed of small cells showing peripheral palisading.

Basal-cell carcinoma: The most common type of skin cancer. It begins in the lowest layer of the epidermis (the outer layer of the skin), called the basal cell layer. It usually develops on sun-exposed areas, especially the head and neck. Basal cell cancer grows slowly and is not likely to spread to distant parts of the body.

Biexponential process: A process of drug (or xenobiotic) clearance with two phases with different rates. The first phase often involves rapid distribution of a drug to peripheral tissues,
while the second phase represents clearance mechanisms that eliminate the drug from the body. (See “Two-compartment pharmacokinetic model.”)

**Bioavailability:** The degree to which a drug or other substance becomes available to the target tissue after administration.

**Biodegradation:** Biotransformation; the conversion within an organism of molecules from one form to another. A change often associated with change in pharmacologic activity.

**Biotransformation:** The chemical conversion of substances by living organisms or enzyme preparations.

**Boiling point:** The boiling point of the anhydrous substance at atmospheric pressure (101.3 kPa) unless a different pressure is stated. If the substance decomposes below or at the boiling point, this is noted (dec). The temperature is rounded off to the nearest °C.

**Bond dissociation energy:** The amount of energy needed to cause homolytic cleavage of a covalent bond. It is one of numerous measures of bond strength.

**Carbon nanotubes:** A tube-shaped material, made of carbon, having a diameter measuring on the nanometer scale. A nanometer is one-billionth of a meter.

**Carcinoma:** Cancer that begins in the skin or in tissues that line or cover internal organs.

**Cell cycle arrest:** A regulatory process that halts progression through the cell cycle during one of the normal phases (G1, S, G2, M).

**Chemical Data Reporting Rule:** Chemical Data Reporting (CDR) is the new name for Inventory Update Reporting (IUR). The purpose of Chemical Data Reporting is to collect quality screening-level, exposure-related information on chemical substances and to make that information available for use by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and, to the extent possible, to the public. The IUR/CDR data are used to support risk screening, assessment, priority setting and management activities and constitute the most comprehensive source of basic screening-level, exposure-related information on chemicals available to EPA. The required frequency of reporting currently is once every four years.

**Coagulation and flocculation:** Addition of chemicals to source water to allow particles to bind together and form larger particles called floc.

**Cochran-Armitage trend test:** A statistical test used in categorical data analysis when the aim is to assess for the presence of an association between a variable with two categories and a variable with $k$ categories. It modifies the chi-square test to incorporate a suspected ordering in the effects of the $k$ categories of the second variable.

**Comet assay:** Single cell gel electrophoresis for assessment of DNA damage in presumptive target tissues.

**Congenital lactic acidosis:** A rare disease caused by mutations in mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) that affect the ability of cells to use energy and cause too much lactic acid to build up in the
body, a condition called lactic acidosis. The word "congenital" means that the underlying condition that increases risk of developing lactic acidosis is present at birth.

**Connexin proteins:** A group of transmembrane proteins that form the intermembrane channels of gap junctions. They are used by inorganic ions and most small organic molecules to pass through cell interiors.

**Conversion factor:** A numerical factor used to multiply or divide a quantity when converting from one system of units to another.

**CpG island:** A short region of DNA in which the frequency of the CG sequence is higher than in other regions. "p" indicates that "C" and "G" are connected by a phosphodiester bond.

**Critical temperature:** The temperature at and above which a gas cannot be liquefied, no matter how much pressure is applied.

**Delocalization of electron cloud:** The spatial distribution of electrons shared among the atoms in a molecule.

**Differential selection:** Selective pressure for self renewal. Gene mutations that confer a growth or survival advantage on the cells that express them will be selectively enriched in the genome of tumors.

**Dihaloacetic acids:** Carboxylic acids in which two halogen atom takes the place of two hydrogen atoms in acetic acid.

**Disinfection:** Application of oxidants to water (chlorine, chloramine, chlorine dioxide, or ozone) or ultraviolet (UV) light to kill disease-causing microorganisms or to render them inactive.

**Disposition:** The description of absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion of a chemical in the body.

**Dominant lethal mutation assay:** The dominant lethal assay identifies germ cell mutagens by measuring the ability of a chemical to penetrate gonadal tissue and produce embryonic death due to chromosomal breakage in parent germ cells.

**Double acid conjugate:** A compound formed by the joining of two acids.

**Ecological study:** A study in which the units of analysis are populations or groups of people rather than individuals.

**Electronegativity:** A measure of the tendency of an atom to attract a bonding pair of electrons.

**Electrophilic reactivity:** The tendency of a charge or neutral molecule to be attracted to an electron rich center.

**Electrophilic substitution reaction:** A substitution reaction in which the new group introduced into the molecule was an electrophile.

**Epigenetic mechanisms:** Changes in gene function that do not involve a change in DNA sequence but are nevertheless mitotically and/or meiotically heritable. Examples include DNA
methylation, alternative splicing of gene transcripts, and assembly of immunoglobulin genes in cells of the immune system.

**FDA Good Laboratory Practice Regulations:** A quality system codified by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration that prescribes operating procedures for conducting nonclinical laboratory studies that support or are intended to support applications for research or marketing permits for products regulated by the Food and Drug Administration.

**Filtration:** Passage of water through porous media to remove particles remaining from sedimentation.

**Fisher’s exact test:** The test for association in a two-by-two table that is based on the exact hypergeometric distribution of the frequencies within the table.

**Floc:** A mass formed in a liquid through precipitation or aggregation of suspended particles.

**Follow-up:** Observation over a period of time of a person, group, or initially defined population whose appropriate characteristics have been assessed to observe changes in health status or health-related variables.

**Fulvic acid:** A family of organic acids, natural compounds, components of the humus, which is a fraction of soil organic matter.

**Gap junctional cell communication:** Intercellular communications through specialized connection between adjacent cells that directly connect the cytoplasm of the two cells, allowing molecules, ions, and electrical impulses to pass through.

**Genomic instability:** An increased propensity for genomic alterations that often occurs in cancer cells. During the process of cell division (mitosis) the inaccurate duplication of the genome in parent cells or the improper distribution of genomic material between daughter cells can result from genomic instability.

**Glioma:** A cancer of the brain that begins in glial cells (cells that surround and support nerve cells).

**Haloacetic acids:** Carboxylic acids in which one or more hydrogen atoms on the alpha carbon of acetic acid is replaced by halogen atoms. Haloacetic acids are commonly formed as disinfection by-products during water purification with chlorine-based disinfectants.

**Halogen:** One of a class of reactive nonmetallic chemical elements that form strongly acidic compounds with hydrogen and simple salts with cationic elements. Members of the class of halogens in order of increasing atomic weight are fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, and astatine.

**Harderian gland:** An orbital gland of the majority of land vertebrates.

**Hard nucleophile:** A molecule that is highly polarized and tend to react with oxygen atoms in DNA or RNA.

**Healthy worker hire effect:** Initial selection of healthy individuals at time of hire so that their disease risks differ from the disease risks in the source (general) population.
Healthy worker survival effect: A continuing selection process such that those who remain employed tend to be healthier than those who leave employment.

Hemangiosarcoma: A type of cancer that begins in the cells that line blood vessels.

Henry’s Law constant: The ratio of the aqueous-phase concentration of a chemical to its equilibrium partial pressure in the gas phase. The larger the Henry’s law constant the less soluble it is (i.e., greater tendency for vapor phase). The relationship is defined for a constant temperature, e.g., 25°C.

Hepatoblastoma: An uncommon malignant liver cancer composed of tissue resembling fetal liver cells, mature liver cells, or bile duct cells.

Hepatocellular adenoma: A benign tumor that starts from hepatocytes, i.e., liver cells.

Hepatocellular carcinoma: A malignant tumor that starts from hepatocytes, i.e., liver cells.

Hepatoma: A liver tumor.

Hereditary tyrosinemia type 1: A metabolic disease caused by a deficiency of the enzyme involved in the last step of tyrosine catabolism.

Historical control range: Tumor rates found in control animals, usually those of the same species and strain as the test animals and exposed by the same route of administration.

Host-mediated assay: This assay evaluates the genotoxicity of a substance to microbial cells introduced (e.g., by intravenous injection) into a host animal. The host animal receives the test compound orally, and therefore acts as a source of chemical metabolism, distribution and excretion of the test compound.

Humic acid: A brown, melanin-tinted mixture of polymers, found in soils and water and resulting from breakdown of organic matter.

Immersion cleaning: A process in which a tank containing cleaning solvent at a temperature below its boiling point is used for metal parts cleaning. To use the vapor degreaser, the operator places the parts to be cleaned in a metal wire basket, removes the cover, and lowers the basket of parts by hand into the cleaning solvent. After a brief period of time, the operator raises the basket and allows the parts to drip-dry inside the degreaser.

Ionizability: The ability of an atom or molecule to lose or gain an electron, just becoming either positively or negatively charged.

Keratoacanthoma: A low-grade, or slow-growing, benign skin tumor that looks like a tiny dome or crater.

Keratosis: A localized horny overgrowth of the skin, such as a wart or callus.

Leaving group: A fragment that leaves a molecule as either an anion or neutral molecule.

Loss of heterozygosity: If there is one normal and one abnormal allele at a particular locus, as might be seen in an inherited autosomal dominant cancer susceptibility disorder, loss of the normal allele produces a locus with no normal function. When the loss of heterozygosity
involves the normal allele, it creates a cell that is more likely to show malignant growth if the altered gene is a tumor suppressor gene.

**Lung adenoma:** A benign tumor of the lung.

**Lymphoma:** Cancer of the lymph nodes.

**Lymphokine-activated killer cell:** Killer cell lymphocytes activated in the presence of interleukin-2 (IL-2). Lymphokine-activated killer cells (LAKs) are cytotoxic effector cells with an exceptionally wide target cell spectrum including normal and malignant cells of different origins. LAKs exhibit a profound heterogeneity with regard to phenotype surface marker expression; it remains to be determined if they represent a unique cell lineage.

**Malignant mesothelioma:** A rare, aggressive form of cancer that develops in the lining of the lungs, abdomen, or heart.

**Melting point:** The melting point of the substance at atmospheric pressure (101.3 kPa). When there is a significant difference between the melting point and the freezing point, a range is given. In case of hydrated substances (i.e., those with crystal water), the apparent melting point is given. If the substance decomposes at or below its melting point, this is noted (dec). The temperature is rounded off to the nearest °C.

**Metabolic activation:** The chemical alteration of an exogenous substance by or in a biological system. The alteration may inactivate the compound or it may result in the production of an active metabolite of an inactive parent compound.

**Metaplasia:** A change of cells to a form that does not normally occur in the tissue in which it is found.

**Methemoglobin:** A form of hemoglobin found in the blood in small amounts. Unlike normal hemoglobin, methemoglobin cannot carry oxygen. Injury or certain drugs, chemicals, or foods may cause a higher-than-normal amount of methemoglobin to be made. This causes a condition called methemoglobinemia.

**Micronuclei:** Small nuclei separate from, and additional to, the main nucleus of a cell, produced during the telophase of mitosis or meiosis by lagging chromosomes or chromosome fragments derived from spontaneous or experimentally induced chromosomal structural changes.

**Miscible:** A physical characteristic of a liquid that forms one liquid phase with another liquid (e.g., water) when they are mixed in any proportion.

**Molecular chaperone:** Any of a diverse group of proteins that oversee the correct intracellular folding and assembly of polypeptides without being components of the final structure.

**Molecular weight:** The molecular weight of a substance is the weight in atomic mass units of all the atoms in a given formula. The value is rounded to the nearest tenth.

**Monohaloacetic acids:** Haloacetic acids containing only one halogen on the alpha carbon of acetic acid; one of fluoracetic acid, chloroacetic acid, bromoacetic acid, or iodoacetic acid.
Mononuclear-cell leukemia: The most common type of leukemia in rats, also known as large cell granular lymphocyte leukemia (LGL).

Morphologically transformed foci: Groups of cells transformed so they lose contact inhibition for their group and multiply to forms foci.

Multiple myeloma: A type of cancer that begins in plasma cells (white blood cells that produce antibodies). Also called Kahler disease, myelomatosis, and plasma cell myeloma.

Mutations: A change in the structure of a gene, resulting from the alteration of single base units in DNA, or the deletion, insertion, or rearrangement of larger sections of genes or chromosomes. The genetic variant can be transmitted to subsequent generations.

National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey: A program of studies designed to assess the health and nutritional status of adults and children in the United States. The survey is unique in that it combines interviews and physical examinations.

Natural killer cells: A type of white blood cell that contains granules with enzymes that can kill tumor cells or microbial cells. Also called large granular lymphocytes.

NF-κB activation: Activation of a protein complex (nuclear factor kappa-light-chain-enhancer of activated B cells) that controls transcription of DNA, cytokine production and cell survival.

Non-differential misclassification: The probability of erroneous classification of an individual, a value, or an attribute into a category other than that to which it should be assigned is the same in all study groups.

Non-Hodgkin lymphoma: A heterogeneous group of malignant lymphomas; the only common feature being an absence of the giant Reed-Sternberg cells characteristic of Hodgkin disease.

Normochromatic erythrocyte: A mature erythrocyte that lacks ribosomes and can be distinguished from immature, polychromatic erythrocytes by stains selective for RNA.

Nrf2: A protein that controls how certain genes are expressed. These genes help protect the cell from damage caused by free radicals (unstable molecules made during normal cell metabolism). Also called NFE2L2 and nuclear factor (erythroid-derived 2)-like 2.

Octanol/water partition coefficient (log $K_{ow}$): A measure of the equilibrium concentration of a compound between octanol and water.

One-compartment model: A pharmacokinetic modeling approach that models the entire body as a single compartment into which a drug is added by a rapid single dose, or bolus. It is assumed that the drug concentration is uniform in the body compartment at all times and is eliminated by a first order process that is described by a first order rate constant.

Ozone-depleting substance: A family of man-made compounds that includes, but are not, foot and eye protection, protective hearing devices (earplugs, muffs) hard hats, respirators and full body suits.

Phase I metabolism: Metabolism of drugs or other xenobiotic molecules, usually by oxidation or hydrolysis and involving a cytochrome P450 monooxygenase.
Phase II metabolism: A conjugation reaction that forms a covalent linkage between a functional group on a xenobiotic molecule and glucuronic acid, sulfate, glutathione, amino acid, or acetate.

p53 haploinsufficient mice: Mice in which one copy of the p53 gene has been lost.

Papilloma: A small solid benign tumor with a clear-cut border that projects above the surrounding tissue.

Personal breathing zone: A sampling area as close as practical to an employee’s nose and mouth, (i.e., in a hemisphere forward of the shoulders within a radius of approximately nine inches) so that it does not interfere with work performance or safety of the employee.

Peroxisome proliferation: The process by which multifunctional cellular organelles increase in number within the cell.

Personal protective equipment: Specialized clothing or equipment, worn by an employee to minimize exposure to a variety of hazards. Examples of PPE include such items as gloves.

Physiological pH: The normal pH of blood; it is generally considered to be 7.4.

Placental barrier: The semipermeable layer of tissue in the placenta that serves as a selective membrane to substances passing from maternal to fetal blood.

Plaque assay: An assay for antibody production by single lymphocytes using cells isolated from the spleen or lymph nodes of animals injected with sheep red blood cells as an antigen. Incubation of the antibody-forming cells together with sheep red cells in an agar layer with exposure to guinea pig serum as complement results in formation of microscopic plaques (i.e., circular areas of hemolytic clearance around a lymphoid cell) due to release of hemolysin.

Plate incorporation: A commonly used procedure for performing a bacterial reverse mutation test. Suspensions of bacterial cells are exposed to the test substance in the presence and in the absence of an exogenous metabolic activation system. In the plate-incorporation method, these suspensions are mixed with an overlay agar and plated immediately onto minimal medium. After two or three days of incubation, revertant colonies are counted and compared with the number of spontaneous revertant colonies on solvent control plates.

Point emission: A release that can be identified with a single discharge source or attributed to a specific physical location.

Poly-3 trend test: A survival-adjusted statistical test that takes survival differences into account by modifying the denominator in the numerical (quantal) estimate of lesion incidence to reflect more closely the total number of animal years at risk.

Polyethylene terephthalate: A synthetic resin made by copolymerizing ethylene glycol and terephthalic acid, widely used to make polyester fibers.
Prophage lambda (λ): A virus in *Escherichia coli* (*E. coli*) bacteria that has integrated itself into the host *E. coli* DNA.

Proto-oncogene: A gene involved in normal cell growth. Mutations (changes) in a proto-oncogene may cause it to become an oncogene, which can cause the growth of cancer cells.

*P* trend: Level of statistical significance of a change over time in a group selected to represent a larger population.

Renal clearance: A pharmacokinetic measurement of the volume of plasma from which a substance is completely removed per unit time.

Reverse osmosis: A process of water purification in which water passes through a porous membrane by application of hydrostatic pressure greater than the osmotic pressure removing ions, molecules, and larger particles from drinking water.

Sarcoma: A malignant tumor of connective or other nonepithelial tissue.

Saturable asymmetric transport: A process by which a molecule is carried across a cell membrane or cell barrier in one direction by a process that can be saturated at high concentrations.

Sebaceous gland adenoma: A benign epithelial neoplasm composed of *sebaceous gland*-like structures or tumors with well-recognized *sebaceous* differentiation by microscopic examination.

Sedimentation: Transfer of floc particles to basins where they either settle to the bottom or are removed by skimming.

Selection bias: An error in choosing the individuals or groups to take part in a study. Ideally, the subjects in a study should be very similar to one another and to the larger population from which they are drawn (for example, all individuals with the same disease or condition). If there are important differences, the results of the study may not be valid.

Sister-chromatid exchange: The exchange during mitosis of homologous genetic material between sister chromatids; increased as a result of inordinate chromosomal fragility due to genetic or environmental factors.

SKF-525A: An inhibitor of drug metabolism and cytochrome P-450 activity.

Soft nucleophile: A molecule with lower polarization that tends to bind with thiol or amino groups on proteins.

Soft tissue sarcoma: A cancer that begins in the muscle, fat, fibrous tissue, blood vessels, or other supporting tissue of the body.

Solubility: The ability of a substance to dissolve in another substance and form a solution. The Report on Carcinogens uses the following definitions (and concentration ranges) for degrees of solubility: (1) *miscible* (see definition), (2) *freely soluble* - capable of being dissolved in a specified solvent to a high degree (> 1,000 g/L), (3) *soluble* - capable of being dissolved in a specified solvent (10–1,000 g/L), (4) *slightly soluble* - capable of being dissolved in a specified
solvent to a limited degree (1-10 g/L), and (5) practically insoluble- incapable of dissolving to any significant extent in a specified solvent (< 1 g/L).

**SOS umuC assay:** An assay using *Salmonella typhimurium* TA1535/pSK1002 that is used to evaluate the ability of testing substance or sample to induce DNA damage. The system is based on alterations in the induction of SOS response as a consequence of DNA damage.

**Specific gravity:** The ratio of the density of a material to the density of a standard material, such as water at a specific temperature; when two temperatures are specified, the first is the temperature of the material and the second is the temperature of water.

**Spot test:** Qualitative assay in which a small amount of test chemical is added directly to a selective agar medium plate seeded with the test organism, e.g., *Salmonella*. As the chemical diffuses into the agar, a concentration gradient is formed. A mutagenic chemical will give rise to a ring of revertant colonies surrounding the area where the chemical was applied; if the chemical is toxic, a zone of growth inhibition will also be observed.

**Squamous-cell carcinoma:** A type of malignant skin cancer that begins in the squamous cells. Squamous cells are the thin, flat cells that make up the epidermis, or the outermost layer of the skin.

**Squamous-cell papilloma:** A generally benign papilloma that arises from the stratified squamous epithelium of the skin, lip, oral cavity, tongue, pharynx, larynx, esophagus, cervix, vagina or anal canal. Squamous cell papillomas are a result of infection with human papillomavirus (HPV).

**Steric bulk:** An indicator of the stability of the spatial arrangement of atoms in a molecule.

**T-helper cell:** A type of immune cell that stimulates killer T cells, macrophages, and B cells to make immune responses. A helper T cell is a type of white blood cell and a type of lymphocyte. Also called CD4-positive T lymphocyte.

**Tg.AC:** A transgenic mouse model with the ability to mount a tumorigenic response within 6 months in skin paint assays when dosed topically with nonmutagenic carcinogens.

**Time-weighted average:** The average exposure concentration of a chemical measured over a period of time (not an instantaneous concentration).

**Tissue:blood partition coefficient:** The ratio of tissue chemical concentration to that of the venous outflow of the tissue when at equilibrium; it is an important parameter required for physiological based pharmacokinetic models.

**Toxicokinetics:** The mathematical description (toxicokinetic models) of the time course of disposition of a chemical in the body.

**Transitions:** DNA nucleotide substitution mutation in which a purine base is substituted for another purine base (adenine → guanine or guanine → adenine) or a pyrimidine base for another pyrimidine base (cytosine → thymine or thymine → cytosine).
**Transversions**: DNA nucleotide substitution mutation in which a purine base (adenine or guanine) is substituted for a pyrimidine base (cytosine or thymine) or vice versa.

**TR\textsubscript{DNA}**: Toxic ratio of EC\textsubscript{50} of *E. coli* DNA repair+/DNA repair –, TR > 1.2 indicates reaction with hard nucleophiles.

**TR\textsubscript{GSH}**: Toxic ratio of EC\textsubscript{50} of *E. coli* GSH+/GSH–, TR > 1.2 indicates reaction with soft nucleophiles.

**Trihaloacetic acids**: Molecules in which all three hydrogens on the alpha carbon of acetic acid have been replaced by halogen atoms of either the same halogen or mixed halogens.

**Trihalomethanes**: Compounds in which three halogen atoms replace hydrogen atoms in a molecule of methane.

**Tubular reabsorption**: The process by which the nephron removes water and solutes from the tubular fluid (pre-urine) and returns them to the circulating blood.

**Tubular secretion**: The transfer of materials from peritubular capillaries to the renal tubular lumen; it is the opposite process of reabsorption. This secretion is caused mainly by active transport and passive diffusion.

**Two-compartment pharmacokinetic model**: A two-compartment pharmacokinetic model resolves the body into a central compartment and a peripheral compartment. The central compartment generally comprises tissues that are highly perfused such as heart, lungs, kidneys, liver and brain. The peripheral compartment comprises less well-perfused tissues such as muscle, fat and skin. A two-compartment model assumes that, following drug administration into the central compartment, the drug distributes between that compartment and the peripheral compartment. However, the drug does not achieve instantaneous distribution (i.e., equilibrium), between the two compartments. After a time interval (t), distribution equilibrium is achieved between the central and peripheral compartments, and elimination of the drug is assumed to occur from the central compartment.

**Type-I error**: The error of rejecting a true null hypothesis, i.e., declaring that a difference exists when it does not.

**Type-II error**: The error of failing to reject a false null hypothesis, i.e., declaring that a difference does not exist when in fact it does.

**Vapor density, relative**: A value that indicates how many times a gas (or vapor) is heavier than air at the same temperature. If the substance is a liquid or solid, the value applies only to the vapor formed from the boiling liquid.

**Vapor pressure**: The pressure of the vapor over a liquid (and some solids) at equilibrium, usually expressed as mm Hg at a specific temperature (°C).

**Volume of distribution**: The theoretical volume that would be necessary to contain the total amount of an administered drug at the same concentration that it is observed in the blood plasma.
Xenobiotic metabolism: A set of metabolic pathways that modify the chemical structure of compounds foreign to an organism's normal biochemistry, such any drug or poison.
Selected Haloacetic Acids Found as Water Disinfection By-Products:

- Dichloroacetic acid
- Dibromoacetic acid
- Bromochloroacetic acid
- Bromodichloroacetic acid
- Tribromoacetic acid
- Chlorodibromoacetic acid

October 30, 2017
Haloacetic Acids Found as Water Disinfection By-products (Selected)
Also known as HAAs

Introduction

Disinfection of the public water supply is an important aspect of public health in the prevention of disease transmission in the United States and worldwide (Calderon 2000). Haloacetic acids are formed as by-products during the disinfection of water, as the result of reactions between chlorine-based disinfection agents (chlorine, chloramine, and chlorine dioxide) and organic molecules in the source water (such as humic acid).

Humans are exposed to haloacetic acids in disinfected water, and exposure is to mixtures of disinfection by-products, including haloacetic acids and other types of by-products. Only one epidemiological study was identified that evaluated the relationship between human cancer risk and estimated exposures to several individual haloacetic acids and to a mixture of five regulated haloacetic acids (monochloroacetic, trichloroacetic, dichloroacetic, monobromoacetic, and dibromoacetic acids) (Jones et al. 2017). This study did not find an association between exposure to haloacetic acids in drinking water and the incidence of kidney cancer. Several epidemiological studies of exposure to chlorinated water or to other water disinfection by-products (such as trihalomethanes) as proxies for mixtures of by-products found an association with increased risk of urinary-bladder cancer (reviewed by IARC 2013, Villanueva et al. 2017). Although these studies did not investigate exposure specifically to haloacetic acids, they provided some information on the potential cancer risk of human exposure to water disinfection by-products, and they supported the relevance to humans of the cancer studies of haloacetic acids at higher doses in experimental animals.

Currently, public exposure to disinfection by-products in chlorinated water is limited through regulation of specific water disinfection by-products or classes of by-products. The existing epidemiological studies cannot separate the effects of different types of water disinfection by-products. However, toxicological studies of specific by-products, including haloacetic acids, are available to help inform public health decisions. Trihalomethanes and haloacetic acids are the largest groups of water disinfection by-products by weight, making up about 50% to 75% of total halogenated disinfection by-products and about 25% to 50% of total organic halides in drinking water (Krasner et al. 2016, Krasner et al. 2006). Two trihalomethanes — chloroform and bromodichloromethane — are listed in the Report on Carcinogens as reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) regulates the mixture of five haloacetic acids mentioned above, two of which (dichloroacetic acid and dibromoacetic acid) are included in this listing.

NTP evaluated 13 haloacetic acids identified in chlorinated drinking water, six of which are individually listed as reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen in the Report on Carcinogens:

- bromochloroacetic acid
- bromodichloroacetic acid
- chlorodibromoacetic acid
- dibromoacetic acid
- dichloroacetic acid
- tribromoacetic acid
The available data (NTP 2017) were inadequate to evaluate haloacetic acids either as a class or as subclasses, such as those based on the number of halogen substitutions (one, two, or three) or the halogen atom(s) substituted (chlorine, bromine, or iodine) or to support listing of any of the other seven haloacetic acids identified in drinking water (monochloroacetic acid, monobromoacetic acid, monoiodoacetic acid, diiodoacetic acid, bromoiodoacetic acid, chloroiodoacetic acid, or trichloroacetic acid).

The profiles for the six listed haloacetic acids follow this introduction. The listings for bromochloroacetic acid, bromodichloroacetic acid dibromoacetic acid, and dichloroacetic acid are based on cancer studies in experimental animals, and the listings for chlorodibromoacetic acid and tribromoacetic acid are based on other relevant data, including data on mechanisms of carcinogenesis. Most of the supporting mechanistic and other relevant information and the data on properties, use, production, exposure, and U.S. regulations to limit exposure are applicable to all six listed haloacetic acids. Therefore, the carcinogenicity data from cancer studies in experimental animals and in humans are discussed separately for each chemical, followed by combined discussions of absorption and metabolism, mechanisms of carcinogenesis, properties, use, formation and removal of disinfection by-products, exposure, regulations, and guidelines for all six listed haloacetic acids.

Bromochloroacetic Acid
CAS No. 5589-96-8
Reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen

Carcinogenicity
Bromochloroacetic acid is reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen based on sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity from studies in experimental animals and supporting evidence from mechanistic studies that demonstrate the biological plausibility of its carcinogenicity in humans.

Cancer Studies in Experimental Animals
Administration of bromochloroacetic acid in the drinking water caused liver tumors in mice of both sexes and tumors at several other tissue sites in rats of both sexes. The studies were considered to have high utility for informing carcinogenicity because they tested sufficient numbers of experimental animals for near lifetime exposures using adequate study designs, dosing and pathology methods. Bromochloroacetic acid caused significant increases in the incidences of benign and malignant liver tumors (hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma) in male and female mice and dose-related significant increases in the incidence of another type of malignant liver tumor (hepatoblastoma) in male mice. Significantly increased incidences were observed in malignant mesothelioma of the abdominal-pelvic peritoneum in male rats and in

---

1NTP’s preliminary listing recommendation proposed for RoC.
multiple fibroadenomas of the mammary gland in female rats. In addition, very rare adenomas of the large intestine were reported in rats of both sexes; the incidences were significantly increased in males and showed significant dose-related trends in both sexes. Fibroadenoma of the mammary gland and adenoma of the large intestine can progress to malignancy (NTP 2009).

Cancer Studies in Humans

The data available from epidemiological studies are inadequate to evaluate the relationship between human cancer and exposure specifically to bromochloroacetic acid. A cohort study of post-menopausal women found no association between estimated exposure to bromochloroacetic acid in drinking water and the risk of kidney cancer (Jones et al. 2017).

Bromodichloroacetic Acid

CAS No. 71133-14-7

Reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen\(^2\)

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Br} \\
\text{Cl} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{Cl} \\
\text{OH}
\end{array}
\]

Carcinogenicity

Bromodichloroacetic acid is *reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen* based on sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity from studies in experimental animals and supporting evidence from mechanistic studies that demonstrate the biological plausibility of its carcinogenicity in humans.

Cancer Studies in Experimental Animals

Administration of bromodichloroacetic acid in the drinking water caused tumors at several different tissue sites in mice and rats. The studies were considered to have high utility for evaluating carcinogenicity because they tested sufficient numbers of experimental animals for near lifetime exposures using adequate study designs, dosing, and pathology methods. Significant dose-related increases in malignant liver tumors (hepatocellular carcinoma and hepatoblastoma) were observed in mice of both sexes, and increased incidences of benign liver tumors (hepatocellular adenoma) were observed in female mice. In male mice, increased incidences of benign and combined benign or malignant tumors of the Harderian gland (an accessory lacrimal gland of the eye) with dose-related trends were observed. Tumors with significant increased incidences in male rats included malignant mesothelioma of the abdominal-pelvic peritoneum and several types of skin tumors, including fibroma (a benign tumor) and the combined incidence of several types of malignant tumors or benign tumors that can progress to malignancy (squamous-cell papilloma, keratoacanthoma, sebaceous-gland adenoma, basal-cell adenoma, basal-cell carcinoma, or squamous-cell carcinoma). Female rats developed multiple

\(^{2}\)NTP’s preliminary listing recommendation proposed for RoC.
fibroadenomas and carcinoma of the mammary gland, which increased with increasing dose of bromodichloroacetic acid (NTP 2015).

**Cancer Studies in Humans**

No epidemiological studies were identified that evaluated the relationship between human cancer and exposure specifically to bromodichloroacetic acid.

---

**Chlorodibromoacetic Acid**

**CAS No. 5278-95-5**

Reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen

![Chemical Structure](image)

**Carcinogenicity**

Chlorodibromoacetic acid is *reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen* based on (1) metabolism studies providing convincing evidence that chlorodibromoacetic acid is metabolized to bromochloroacetic acid, (2) sufficient evidence for the carcinogenicity of bromochloroacetic acid from studies in experimental animals, and (3) supporting evidence from mechanistic studies that demonstrate the biological plausibility of its carcinogenicity in humans. No cancer studies in humans or experimental animals exposed to chlorodibromoacetic acid were identified.

Findings from a toxicokinetics study of rats exposed to chlorodibromoacetic by oral dosing suggest that this haloacetic acid is highly metabolized *in vivo*; however, this study modeled rates of metabolism and excretion and did not identify specific metabolites (Schultz *et al.* 1999). *In vitro* studies found that all of the metabolism of chlorodibromoacetic acid results from loss of a bromide ion to form bromochloroacetic acid, which indicates that molecule is the only metabolite (Saghir *et al.* 2011). These studies were conducted using rat and human microsomes (enzymes extracted from liver cells as small particles) and exposed to the haloacetic acid under conditions that mimic those *in vivo* (e.g., similar oxygen levels as measured in liver tissue).

Administration of bromochloroacetic acid in the drinking water caused liver and Harderian-gland tumors in mice and malignant mesothelioma, mammary-gland tumors, and skin tumors in rats (NTP 2009 and as described above). Mechanistic studies show that chlorodibromoacetic acid (like bromochloroacetic acid) causes mutagens in bacteria and oxidative stress and DNA damage in cultured mammalian cells. These effects are characteristic of other human carcinogens, supporting the biological plausibility of the carcinogenicity of chlorodibromoacetic acid in humans. Therefore, it is reasonably anticipated that chronic oral exposure of humans to chlorodibromoacetic acid could cause cancer.

---

3NTP’s preliminary listing recommendation proposed for RoC.
Dibromoacetic Acid

CAS No. 631-64-1

Reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen\(^4\)

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Br} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{Br} \\
\text{OH}
\end{array}
\]

Carcinogenicity

Dibromoacetic acid is *reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen* based on sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity from studies in experimental animals and supporting evidence from mechanistic studies that demonstrate the biological plausibility of its carcinogenicity in humans.

*Cancer Studies in Experimental Animals*

Administration of dibromoacetic acid in the drinking water caused tumors at several different tissue sites in mice and rats. The studies were considered to have high utility for informing carcinogenicity because they tested sufficient numbers of experimental animals for near lifetime exposures using adequate study designs, dosing, and pathology methods. Dibromoacetic acid caused dose-related significant increases in the incidences of benign and malignant liver tumors (hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma) in male and female mice and another type of malignant liver tumor (hepatoblastoma) in male mice. In addition, significant increases were observed in the combined incidence of benign and malignant lung tumors (alveolar/bronchiolar adenoma and carcinoma) in male mice. In rats, dose-related significant increases were also observed in the incidence of malignant mesothelioma of the abdominal-pelvic peritoneum (the lining of the abdominal cavity) in males and in mononuclear-cell leukemia in females (NTP 2007). Although the background rates of mononuclear-cell leukemia in rats are high and variable, the incidence of these neoplasms in the mid- and high-dose exposure groups exceeded the background rates (historical controls), which increases the confidence that dibromoacetic caused this type of leukemia.

*Cancer Studies in Humans*

No epidemiological studies were identified that evaluated the relationship between human cancer and exposure specifically to dibromoacetic acid. A cohort study of post-menopausal women found no association between the risk of kidney cancer and estimated exposure via drinking water to a mixture of haloacetic acids that contained dibromoacetic acid (Jones *et al.* 2017).

Dichloroacetic Acid

CAS No. 79-43-6

Reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen\(^5\)

\(^4\)NTP’s preliminary listing recommendation proposed for RoC.

\(^5\)NTP’s preliminary listing recommendation proposed for RoC.
Carcinogenicity

Dichloroacetic acid is *reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen* based on sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity from studies in experimental animals and supporting evidence from mechanistic studies that demonstrate the biological plausibility of its carcinogenicity in humans.

*Cancer Studies in Experimental Animals*

Administration of dichloroacetic acid in the drinking water caused liver tumors in rats and mice. All of the studies were considered to have moderate to high utility to inform carcinogenicity and the findings cannot be explained by potential biases. In mice of both sexes, significant increases in benign and malignant liver tumors (hepatocellular adenoma and carcinoma) were observed in several studies (Daniel *et al.* 1992, DeAngelo *et al.* 1991, DeAngelo *et al.* 1999, Herren-Freund *et al.* 1987, Pereira 1996). In a stop-exposure study, male and female mice were exposed at weaning (4 weeks of age) to dichloroacetic acid in drinking water for a ten-week period, followed by no further exposure to this chemical for 80 weeks. Significant increases in benign and malignant liver tumors were reported for both sexes and tumor incidence approached levels found with near lifetime exposures (Wood *et al.* 2015). Dichloroacetic acid also caused a significant increase in the incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma and hepatocellular adenoma or carcinoma (combined) in male rats in two drinking water studies (DeAngelo *et al.* 1996). (Female rats were not tested for carcinogenicity in these studies.)

*Cancer Studies in Humans*

The data available from epidemiological studies are inadequate to evaluate the relationship between human cancer and exposure specifically to dichloroacetic acid. A cohort study of post-menopausal women found no association between estimated exposure to dichloroacetic acid in drinking water and the risk of kidney cancer (Jones *et al.* 2017).

**Tribromoacetic Acid**

CAS No. 75-96-7

Reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Br} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Br} & \quad \text{Br} \\
\end{align*}
\]

*Carcinogenicity*

Tribromoacetic acid is *reasonably anticipated to be a human carcinogen* based on metabolism studies providing convincing evidence that tribromoacetic acid is metabolized to

---

6NTP’s preliminary listing recommendation proposed for RoC.
dibromoacetic acid, (2) sufficient evidence for the carcinogenicity of dibromoacetic acid from studies in experimental animals, and (3) supporting evidence from mechanistic studies that demonstrate the biological plausibility of its carcinogenicity in humans. No cancer studies in humans or experimental animals exposed to tribromoacetic acid were identified.

Findings from a toxicokinetics study of rats exposed to tribromoacetic acid by oral dosing suggest that this haloacetic acid is highly metabolized \textit{in vivo}; however, this study modeled rates of metabolism and excretion and did not identify specific metabolites (Schultz \textit{et al.} 1999). An \textit{in vitro} study found that half of the total metabolism of tribromoacetic acid was due to a loss of bromide to form dibromoacetic acid, which indicates that molecule is the major metabolite. These studies were conducted using rat and human microsomes (enzymes extracted from liver cells as small particles) and exposed to the haloacetic acid under conditions that mimic those \textit{in vivo} (e.g., similar oxygen levels as measured in liver tissue).

Administration of dibromoacetic acid in the drinking water caused liver and lung tumors in mice and malignant mesothelioma and mammary-gland tumors in rats (NTP 2007 and as described above). Mechanistic studies showed that tribromoacetic acid (like dibromoacetic acid) causes mutations in bacteria and oxidative stress and DNA damage in cultured mammalian cells. These effects are characteristic of other human carcinogens, supporting the biological plausibility of the carcinogenicity of tribromoacetic acid in humans. Therefore, it is reasonably anticipated that chronic oral exposure of humans to tribromoacetic acid could cause cancer.

### Selected Haloacetic Acids

#### Carcinogenicity: Mechanistic and Other Relevant Data

The mechanisms by which these haloacetic acids cause cancer in experimental animals are not known and most likely involve several modes of action. Although many of the haloacetic acids cause similar effects \textit{in vitro} and \textit{in vivo}, the available mechanistic and other relevant data are insufficient to enable evaluation of the carcinogenicity of haloacetic acids as a class or subclass (NTP 2017, Section 7).

#### Absorption and Metabolism

Ingested haloacetic acids are rapidly absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract and are found in the blood and tissues at approximately equal concentrations. Metabolism of di- and trihaloacetic acids is complex, but the limited data available suggest that metabolism of trihaloacetic acid to dihaloacetic acid is similar in rodents and humans (Merding \textit{et al.} 2000, Saghir \textit{et al.} 2011, Saghir and Schultz 2005, Stacpoole \textit{et al.} 1998). Dihaloacetic acids are metabolized to a greater extent than trihaloacetic acids, and their metabolism results in formation of the metabolites glyoxylate, glycolate, oxylate, glycine, and carbon dioxide.

The three trihaloacetic acids discussed here (bromodichloroacetic acid, chlorodibromoacetic acid, and tribromoacetic acid) are metabolized by liver enzymes (cytochrome P450) to remove one of the halogens, to form a dihaloacetic acid (dichloroacetic, bromochloroacetic, or dibromoacetic acid). An important effect of this metabolism relevant to potential mechanism(s) of carcinogenesis is the formation of a highly reactive free radical as part of the process. The chemical nature of bromine makes it the halogen most likely to be removed in this conversion (Saghir \textit{et al.} 2011).
Studies on Mechanisms of Carcinogenesis

Haloacetic acids have a weak positive charge (i.e., are weak electrophiles) and are attracted to macromolecules (proteins, lipids, DNA, or RNA) with a weak negative charge (i.e., weak nucleophiles), such as thiol or amino groups on proteins; stronger electrophiles can also bind with oxygen in DNA and RNA. The body of data suggests that these listed haloacetic acids may induce cancer through reactions with macromolecules leading to oxidative stress, mutagenic and genotoxic effects, inhibition of enzymes leading to oxidative stress, and/or regulation of genes involved in carcinogenicity.

Most of the available mechanistic data on the haloacetic acids are from in vitro studies measuring oxidative stress, genotoxicity, and toxicity. In general, in vitro studies indicate that dihaloacetic acids are more genotoxic, cytotoxic, and mutagenic than trihaloacetic acids, and that bromine substitution for one of the hydrogen atoms on the alpha carbon (see figure in Properties below) has a more potent effect on these properties than chlorine substitution (Kargalioglu et al. 2002, Plewa et al. 2004, Stalter et al. 2016). All of the listed haloacetic acids cause oxidative stress (assessed in various types of in vitro assays), which leads to the generation of reactive oxygen species that can damage DNA and cause mutations. In addition, exposure of experimental animals to some di- and trihaloacetic acids (dichloroacetic, dibromoacetic, bromochloroacetic, and bromodichloroacetic acids, the only ones tested) caused oxidative stress (as evidenced by formation of 8-hydroxydeoxyguanosine DNA adducts and lipid peroxidation); the strongest response was to the brominated haloacetic acids (Austin et al. 1996, Larson and Bull 1992). The types of pathways that generate oxidative stress may vary across the haloacetic acids, and several pathways may be involved (Celik et al. 2009, Cemeli et al. 2006, Dad et al. 2013, El Arem et al. 2014a, El Arem et al. 2014b, El Arem et al. 2014c, Ondricek et al. 2012, Pals et al. 2011, Stalter et al. 2016).

Overall, the data suggest that haloacetic acids do not bind to DNA, and most likely cause genotoxicity through oxidative stress. Both the dihaloacetic acids (dichloroacetic, dibromoacetic, and bromochloroacetic acids) and trihaloacetic acids (tribromoacetic, bromodichloroacetic, and chlorodibromoacetic acids) listed here caused mutations in bacteria (NTP 2017, Section 6). Evidence for other types of genotoxicity is limited, because only a few haloacetic acids (mostly the dihaloacetic acids) were tested for each type of damage, and the findings for each end point were not always consistent across different haloacetic acids. The strongest evidence is that bromine-containing haloacetic acids (dibromoacetic, tribromoacetic, and bromochloroacetic acids) damage DNA (e.g., cause DNA strand breaks) and that dibromoacetic acid and dichloroacetic acid damage chromosomes (as indicated by micronucleus formation) and cause gene mutations in vitro (NTP 2017, Section 6).

Studies provide some insight into one of the mechanisms leading to oxidative stress. Dichloroacetic acid has been shown to affect energy metabolism within the cell by inhibiting the a mitochondrial enzyme complex (pyruvate dehydrogenase complex), thus enhancing oxidative metabolism and potentially increasing formation of reactive oxygen species and DNA damage and mutations, if not correctly repaired (Pals et al. 2011). This mechanism could potentially operate with other haloacetic acids as well. Another mechanism by which some haloacetic acids (dichloroacetic, dibromoacetic, and bromochloroacetic acids) can cause oxidative stress is via the inhibition of an enzyme involved in dihaloacetic acid metabolism (glutathione S-transferase zeta), which results in reduced metabolism and clearance of dihaloacetic acids, induction of
oxidative stress, and activation of stress-response pathways (Anderson et al. 1999, Gonzalez-Leon et al. 1999).

Other studies suggest that dichloroacetic acid and dibromoacetic acid may cause cancer by regulating genes related to carcinogenicity (e.g., c-myc, c-jun, or IGF-II, which can promote cell growth, division, or death). Dichloroacetic acid induced hypomethylation (loss of methyl groups in DNA nucleotides) in the promoter region of the c-myc gene in liver, kidney, and urinary-bladder tissues in mice; enhanced cellular proliferation in mouse liver (Ge et al. 2001); and promoted liver tumors (Tao et al. 2000) and kidney tumors (Pereira et al. 2001) in mice.

**Properties**

Dihaloacetic acids

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{X} & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{X} & \quad \text{H} & \quad \text{X} & \quad \alpha
\end{align*}
\]

Trihaloacetic acids

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{X} & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{X} & \quad \text{X} & \quad \text{X} & \quad \alpha
\end{align*}
\]

\(\alpha = \text{Alpha carbon}; \ X = \text{halogen atoms (chloride or bromide).}\)

Haloacetic acids are water-soluble chemicals that do not evaporate easily (nonvolatile); they vary in the number and type of halogen, i.e., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, or iodine, substitutions at the alpha carbon of acetic acid (see figure above). The selected haloacetic acids listed here have either two or three halogen substitutions of either chlorine or bromine. The physicochemical characteristics of each haloacetic acid depend on the number of chlorine and bromine atoms in the molecule.

At physiological pH, these haloacetic acids lose a hydrogen ion and have a negative charge (ionized form). The negative log of the acid dissociation constant (p\(K_a\), see table below) is a measure of the strength of an acid in solution, and the acid strength increases as p\(K_a\) decreases. Therefore, trihaloacetic acids, which have lower p\(K_a\) values, are stronger acids than dihaloacetic acids. The p\(K_a\) and two other physicochemical properties are likely to be related to the toxicity of haloacetic acids, because they describe the ability of the molecules to enter cells and their potential reactivity with other molecules within a cell. Uncharged molecules enter cells much more readily than charged ones so the potential for ionization as measured by p\(K_a\) helps predict that movement. In addition, the relative solubility of the molecule in fatty substances (lipids) compared with water also determines how readily that molecule will cross the lipid-rich cell membranes and chemists define this as the octanol-water partition coefficient (log \(K_{ow}\)) with octanol representing the lipids. Both p\(K_a\) and log \(K_{ow}\) also affect the potential reactivity of a molecule along with a measure of its ability to exchange electrons with other molecules, which is represented by a measurement of the energy of the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital (E\(_{\text{LUMO}}\)) where an electron could exist. The toxic potency of a haloacetic acid correlates with its reactivity due to accepting electrons from other molecules and is higher for brominated than chlorinated haloacetic acids (Pals et al. 2011, Plewa et al. 2004). A haloacetic acid molecule’s reactivity increases as the energy required to break bonds with the alpha carbon and its E\(_{\text{LUMO}}\) value decrease and vice versa. Physical and chemical properties of the six listed haloacetic acids are shown in the following table.
**Use**

Although the focus of this profile is exposure to haloacetic acids found in drinking water, some of these haloacetic acids are also used for commercial purposes. Dichloroacetic acid is used as a chemical manufacturing intermediate (e.g., in the production of glyoxylic acid), a laboratory reagent in polyethylene terephthalate production, a skin cauterizing agent, a medical disinfectant (e.g., a substitute for formalin), and treatment for congenital lactic acidosis, and it has been proposed as a targeted cancer therapeutic agent (IARC 2014). Tribromoacetic acid has been used in organic synthesis (HSDB 2009c), and dibromoacetic acid and bromochloroacetic acid have been reported to be used in research (IARC 2013).

**Formation and Removal of Disinfection By-products**

The purpose of water disinfection is to remove contaminants and disease-causing agents from drinking water (CDC 2015). The most common steps in conventional water treatment are coagulation and flocculation, sedimentation, filtration, disinfection, and storage (CDC 2015, EPA 2016a). Water disinfection is regulated by EPA through Surface Water Treatment Rules, which established maximum contaminant level goals for viruses, bacteria (such as *Legionella*), and other microorganisms (such as the protozoans *Giardia lamblia* and *Cryptosporidium*). EPA regulates five of the most common haloacetic acids (HAA5) in the public water supply: monochloroacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid, monobromoacetic acid, dibromoacetic acid, and trichloroacetic acid. In order to support national drinking water standards, EPA has more recently required monitoring of nine common haloacetic acids (HAA9): monochloroacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid, monobromoacetic acid, dibromoacetic acid, trichloroacetic acid, bromochloroacetic acid, chlorodibromoacetic acid, bromodichloroacetic acid, and tribromoacetic acid.

The presence of haloacetic acids in disinfected drinking water in the United States is well established, and knowledge of the chemical and physical processes that lead to their formation is important to help control their levels as required by law and to protect public health. The factors that determine the types and amounts of disinfection by-products formed during water treatment include (1) the presence of organic matter and inorganic matter in the source water, which varies daily and seasonally in concentration, (2) the disinfecting chemicals used, (3) how long the organic matter is exposed to the disinfecting chemicals, (4) the temperature at which the disinfection process takes place, and (5) the pH of the water during the disinfection process. (The
relationships among these factors are summarized in the diagram below.) The organic molecules in source water are often large, complex molecules, from which intermediate molecules are formed as a result of exposure to disinfecting chemicals. Further reaction between these intermediate molecules and disinfecting chemicals during disinfection and storage result in the formation of halogenated by-products, including haloacetic acids (NTP 2017, Section 2).

---

### Source water

**Organic molecules**
- **Large molecules** – humic acid, fulvic acid
- **Small molecules** – carboxylic acids, free amino acids

**Other halogens**
- bromide & iodide

**Other anthropogenic organic material**
- X-ray contrast media

### Disinfecting chemicals

- chlorine, chloramine, or chlorine dioxide

### Chlorine disinfection reactions

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cl}_2 + H_2O & \leftrightarrow HOCl + H^+ \\
\text{HOCl} + Br^- & \leftrightarrow HOBBr + Cl^+ \\
\text{HOCl} + I^- & \leftrightarrow HOI + Cl^-
\end{align*}
\]

---

### Halogenated intermediate molecules

- NOM + HOCl \(\leftrightarrow\) Cl-DBPs
- NOM + HOBBr \(\leftrightarrow\) Br-DBPs
- NOM + HOI \(\leftrightarrow\) I-DBPs

### Halogenated HAAs

---

**Major factors affecting the formation of halogenated disinfection by-products**

Organic molecules in source water plus naturally occurring or anthropogenic bromide and iodide react with various chlorine-containing disinfecting chemicals to form halogenated intermediate molecules and ultimately the halogenated HAAs.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{HOCl} & = \text{hypochlorous acid} \\
\text{HOBr} & = \text{hypobromous acid} \\
\text{HOI} & = \text{hypiodous acid} \\
\text{NOM} & = \text{natural organic matter}
\end{align*}
\]

Three general approaches are used for remediation of haloacetic acid disinfection by-products: (1) removal of precursors before disinfection, (2) optimization or modification of disinfection practices (e.g., altering disinfectant type, dose, or application point in the water treatment process), and (3) removal of disinfection by-products after formation. Before treatment, alum coagulation combined with the use of ion-exchange resins can remove up to 80% of precursors, activated charcoal filtration can remove up to 91%, and membrane nanofiltration can remove up to 99%. Disinfection practices can be modified through the use of ozone and ultraviolet irradiation, which do not leave residual chlorine in the water, or by using a non-chlorinated pre-oxidation chemical. Haloacetic acids can be removed after their formation through biologically active granular activated charcoal filtration.

---

**Exposure**

Disinfection of water has achieved tremendous public health benefits in the United States and worldwide through reduction in exposure of individuals to disease-causing microorganisms. Over 250,000,000 people in the United States are exposed to chlorinated drinking water,
indicating that a significant number of people in the United States are exposed to haloacetic acids found as water disinfection by-products. Humans are exposed to haloacetic acids though drinking of tap water, consumption of beverages and food that have come in contact with treated water, and ingestion, dermal, and inhalation exposure to disinfected water in swimming pools and spas (both occupational and recreational). In addition, people can be occupationally exposed to dichloroacetic acid at workplaces where it is used as a chemical intermediate or through its use as a medical disinfectant.

**Occurrence of haloacetic acids in treated water**

The listed haloacetic acids that have been detected at the highest levels are dichloroacetic acid, chlorobromoacetic acid, and bromodichloroacetic acid. The concentration ranges at which they have been detected are shown in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Listed haloacetic acid</th>
<th>Concentration range (µg/L)</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bromodichloroacetic acid</td>
<td>5.28–12.2</td>
<td>HSDB 2009b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorobromoacetic acid</td>
<td>&lt; LOD–18</td>
<td>HSDB 2009a, IARC 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorodibromoacetic acid</td>
<td>&lt; LOD–5.37</td>
<td>HSDB 2009d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dibromoacetic acid</td>
<td>2.1 (0.63–12)</td>
<td>EPA 2016b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dichloroacetic acid</td>
<td>10.4 (1.3–32)</td>
<td>EPA 2016b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribromoacetic acid</td>
<td>0–10</td>
<td>McGuire et al. 2002</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{a}\text{LOD} = \text{limit of detection (not specified).}^{b}\text{Median (5th percentile–95th percentile).}\)

According to national occurrence data from the American Water Works Association for HAA5 in U.S. water disinfection systems serving populations greater than 100,000 people from 1997 to 2014, 95th percentile HAA5 concentrations have been generally decreasing since 2000 and have been at or below the EPA maximum contaminant level (MCL) of 60 µg/L since 2004 (Seidel et al. 2017). However, there is evidence that smaller facilities might have had more difficulty meeting this regulatory limit; EPA data indicate that from 1997 to 2004, at least 5% of smaller systems (serving fewer than 10,000 people) exceeded the HAA5 MCL. Data on HAA5 for U.S. water facilities serving communities of all sizes in 2011 indicate a median concentration of 20.1 µg/L, with the 5th percentile at 2.0 µg/L and the 95th percentile at 59.0 µg/L.

**Overall potential exposure to haloacetic acids**

Exposure to mixtures of haloacetic acids from consumption of chlorinated tap water in the United States is estimated to be about 69 µg per day (5% to 95% = 6.9 to 204 µg per day) for men and 55 µg per day (5% to 95% = 5.5 to 162.2 µg per day) for women, based on median levels of mixtures of haloacetic acids in U.S. water facilities (2011 levels for facilities of all sizes). Daily consumption of water from all foods and liquids by adults over the age of 20 has been estimated by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (Rosinger and Herrick 2016) to be 3.46 L for men and 2.75 L for women, with plain tap water accounting for about one third of the total.
Sources of exposure other than drinking water

In addition to ingesting haloacetic acids by drinking plain tap water, humans can be exposed to them in other beverages prepared with chlorinated water, such as tea, coffee, fruit drinks, and soft drinks, or by eating food that has come in contact with treated water, such as by being rinsed or washed before or after cooking or cooked in chlorinated water. Low levels of haloacetic acids may also be present in natural foods. The median amounts of haloacetic acids in food range from less than 1 µg/kg in milk to over 10 µg/kg in soft drinks, prepared salads, and minimally processed vegetables, such as fruits or vegetables washed with chlorine-based chemicals in water (Cardador and Gallego 2016). The levels of haloacetic acids in canned vegetables, fruit juices, and cheese fall between these levels. The Institute of Medicine has estimated that 20% of total water consumption is derived from foods; in addition to the 33% from tap water, the remaining 47% would derive from beverages such as tea, coffee, soft drinks, and fruit drinks (NASEM 2004).

The disinfection of water in swimming pools and spas often results in higher levels of haloacetic acids than in disinfected tap water, because of the use of a higher chlorine residual (level of chlorine remaining after initial treatment) and higher temperatures than in typical water distribution systems (Chowdhury et al. 2014, Parinet et al. 2012). Dichloroacetic acid is the most abundant haloacetic acid detected in swimming pools (Teo et al. 2015); in U.S. swimming pools disinfected with chlorine, its concentration has been reported to range from 52 to 6,800 µg/L (Kanan 2010, Teo et al. 2015). Brominated haloacetic acids (including dibromoacetic, bromodichloroacetic, and chlorodibromoacetic acid) occur at the highest concentrations in seawater swimming pools treated with chlorine bleach as disinfectant; levels of mixtures of haloacetic acids (HAA9) ranged from 417 µg/L to 2,233 µg/L in seawater pools tested (Parinet et al. 2012). Dermal exposure (accounting for about 1% of total exposure to haloacetic acids from swimming pools and spas) and inhalation exposure (accounting for about 5% of total exposure from swimming pools and spas) are not considered major routes of exposure, as haloacetic acids are neither volatile nor appreciably absorbed through the skin (Regli et al. 2015, Xu et al. 2002). About 94% of exposure to haloacetic acids from swimming pools is through ingestion of pool water (Cardador and Gallego 2011), and haloacetic acids have been detected in the urine of swimming pool attendants and swimmers. Urinary levels of dichloroacetic acid for indoor swimming pool attendants were positively correlated with length of exposure (increasing from 313 ng/L at 2 hours to 450 ng/L at 4 hours) and were higher than those of outdoor pool attendants (51 ng/L at 2 hours) (Cardador and Gallego 2011).

Regulations

Department of Transportation (DOT)

Dichloroacetic acid is considered a hazardous material, and special requirements have been set for marking, labeling, and transporting this material.

Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)

Safe Drinking Water Act

Maximum contaminant level for HAA5 = 60 µg/L.
Food and Drug Administration (FDA)
Maximum permissible level of HAA5 in bottled water = 60 µg/L.

Guidelines
American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH)
Threshold limit value – time-weighted average (TLV-TWA) = 0.5 ppm for dichloroacetic acid.
Dichloroacetic acid is listed as a confirmed animal carcinogen with unknown relevance to humans.
Potential for dermal absorption for dichloroacetic acid.

Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
Integrated Risk Information System (IRIS) oral reference dose (RfD) = 4 × 10⁻³ mg/kg b.w. per day for dichloroacetic acid.
IRIS oral cancer slope factor = 5 × 10⁻² per mg/kg b.w. per day for dichloroacetic acid.
IRIS drinking water unit risk = 1.4 × 10⁻⁶ per µg/L for dichloroacetic acid.

References


NTP. 2015. *Toxicology Studies of Bromodichloroacetic Acid (CAS No. 71133-14-7) in F344/N Rats and B6C3F1/N Mice and Toxicology and Carcinogenesis Studies of Bromodichloroacetic Acid in F344/Ntac Rats and B6C3F1/N Mice (Drinking Water Studies).* NTP TR 583. Research Triangle Park, NC: National Toxicology Program. 264 pp.


